

# zenon manual

# **Batch Control**

v.8.00



©2018 Ing. Punzenberger COPA-DATA GmbH

All rights reserved.

Distribution and/or reproduction of this document or parts thereof in any form are permitted solely with the written permission of the company COPA-DATA. Technical data is only used for product description and are not guaranteed qualities in the legal sense. Subject to change, technical or otherwise.



# Contents

1.	Welcome to COPA-DATA help7				
2.	Batch	Control	l	7	
3.	Intro	duction .		)	
4.	Term	inology .		L	
5.	Proce	dure		5	
6.	Engin	eering i	n the Editor15	5	
	6.1	Units		5	
		6.1.1	Toolbar unit tree	ŝ	
		6.1.2	Project tree - Batch Control context menu1	7	
		6.1.3	Context menu units	3	
		6.1.4	Context menu unit X	3	
		6.1.5	Detail view units	)	
		6.1.6	Detail view unit X	J	
		6.1.7	Information in Runtime	)	
	6.2	Phases .		L	
		6.2.1	Context menu phase	3	
		6.2.2	Detail view phase	3	
	6.3	Paramet	er	1	
		6.3.1	Detail view tag2	5	
		6.3.2	Command TAGs	5	
		6.3.3	Return TAG	7	
		6.3.4	Example for status tag28	3	
		6.3.5	Execution period	)	
	6.4	Conditio	ons	L	
		6.4.1	Waiting periods	1	
	6.5	Reaction	ns	1	
		6.5.1	Context menu reactions unit tree	5	
		6.5.2	Detail view reactions	5	
		6.5.3	Events	7	



		6.5.4	Reaction types	
	6.6		l Strategy	
		6.6.1	Control strategies node context menu	
		6.6.2	Context menu selected control strategy	
		6.6.3	Toolbar and control strategy list context menu	
		6.6.4	Parameter	
	6.7	•	e links	
	6.8	Create s	screen of type Batch Control	
		6.8.1	Control elements	
	6.9	Job vari	iables	62
	6.10	Screen	switch Batch Control	63
		6.10.1	Recipe list settings	64
		6.10.2	Variable assignment	71
		6.10.3	Tag list settings	
		6.10.4	Control strategies list settings	93
		6.10.5	Column selection	94
		6.10.6	Column Format	
	6.11	Keyboa	ırds	
	6.12	zenon f	functions	102
		6.12.1	Export Batch recipes	
		6.12.2	Import Batch recipes	
		6.12.3	Execute recipe command change or mode change	
		6.12.4	Create control recipe	115
		6.12.5	Release master recipe	
	6.13	Rules fo	or recipe creation	
7.	Conv	ersion		122
8.	Confi	igure an	d control in the Runtime	122
	8.1	User int	terface	
		8.1.1	Control elements of the recipe editor	
		8.1.2	Graphical design	132
		8.1.3	Status line	
		8.1.4	Touch operation	134
	8.2	2 Engineering rules for recipes		134
	8.3	Recipe t	types	



	8.4	Master	r recipes	
		8.4.1	Create master recipe	
		8.4.2	Toolbar and context menu for master recipe list view	
		8.4.3	PFC recipe	142
		8.4.4	Matrix recipe	
		8.4.5	Master recipe - test mode	
		8.4.6	Release master recipe	
		8.4.7	Highlight recipe as outdated	
		8.4.8	Versioning for master recipes	
		8.4.9	Actions	
	8.5	Operat	tions	
		8.5.1	Toolbar and context menu operations	
		8.5.2	Selection of the template for an operation	
		8.5.3	Status operation	
		8.5.4	Symbol for execution	
	8.6	Contro	I strategies	
	8.7	Contro	l recipe	203
		8.7.1	Create control recipe	203
		8.7.2	Toolbar and context menu for control recipe list view	204
		8.7.3	Control recipe edit mode toolbar	205
		8.7.4	Execute control recipe	207
	8.8	Validat	te recipe	
	8.9	Recipe	execution	209
		8.9.1	Commands	
		8.9.2	Recipe status	211
		8.9.3	Recipe Execution Engine (REE)	213
	8.10	Manag	e recipes	237
		8.10.1	Manage master recipes	238
		8.10.2	Manage control recipes	242
		8.10.3	Import recipes	245
		8.10.4	Saving on the hard disk and backup scenarios	247
	8.11	Synchro	onization	249
9.	Func	tion aut	thorizations	251
10	. Beha	vior in t	the network	251
	10.1	Redund	dancy	



11.	11. Reporting		
	11.1	Batch Control recipe filter	.254
12.	Form	ula editor	258
	12.1	Adding parameters	.264
	12.2	List of status bits	. 265
	12.3	Logical Operators	. 267
	12.4	Bit formulas	. 268
		12.4.1 Example: ORing bitwise	. 268
	12.5	Comparison operators	. 269
	12.6	Examples for formulas	. 270
13.	XML	export: Units, phases and recipes	271
	13.1	General recipe properties in the XML file	.271
	13.2	Matrix properties in the XML file	. 274
	13.3	PFC properties in the XML file	. 275
	13.4	Parameter properties	. 282
14.	CEL		292
15.	Failur	e handling	294
	15.1	communication errors	. 294
	15.2	PLC error	. 296
16.	Error	treatment	297



# 1. Welcome to COPA-DATA help

## ZENON VIDEO-TUTORIALS

You can find practical examples for project configuration with zenon in our YouTube channel. The tutorials are grouped according to topics and give an initial insight into working with different zenon modules. All tutorials are available in English.

#### **GENERAL HELP**

If you cannot find any information you require in this help chapter or can think of anything that you would like added, please send an email to documentation@copadata.com.

#### **PROJECT SUPPORT**

You can receive support for any real project you may have from our Support Team, who you can contact via email at support@copadata.com.

#### LICENSES AND MODULES

If you find that you need other modules or licenses, our staff will be happy to help you. Email sales@copadata.com.

# 2. Batch Control

The module Batch Control offers the possibility to automate batch-orientated manufacturing processes for lot products. The module complies to ANSI/ISA–88.01–1995 also known as ANSI/ISA–S88.

For Batch Control there are two different editors available in the Runtime.

- ▶ Matrix editor: (on page 178) For simple, sequentially or parallel running recipes.
- ▶ PFC editor: (on page 143) For complex recipes with branches.



Depending on the license, either both editors or only the matrix editor is available to you.

# Attention

Notes in the help embedded in the Editor on VBA keywords are not functional in the current version.

## NOTE FOR CHANGE FROM 7.00 TO 7.10 OR HIGHER

Before converting a project to a new zenon version all recipes must be completed. Running recipes are not executed any longer after a restart. The restart only functions within the same zenon version.

Attention: Projects with recipes that were created in zenon 7.10 or higher cannot run in zenon 7.0.

#### EFFECTS OUTSIDE BATCH CONTROL

When using different versions for Editor and Runtime, problems can occur if the Batch Control module is licensed but Batch Control is not used.

**Background:** Some files are compiled in Runtime as soon as the module is licensed. A batch project that was compiled with 7.0 cannot be executed in 7.10.

#### Solutions:

- Compile the project with an Editor of version 7.10 or higher.
- Use a Runtime of version 7.0.
- Use a license that does not include the Batch Control module.

#### BATCH CONTROL AND COMMAND SEQUENCER MODULE

If both the Batch Control (on page 7) module and the **Command Sequencer** module, which both require a license, are licensed at the same time, selection of the module used is carried out by means of the project setting.

To select the preferred module in Runtime:

- Click on the node of your project in the Editor.
- Go to the **Runtime settings** project properties group.
- Select, for License module in Runtime of the Preferred module property, Command Sequencer(default) or Batch Control.

The selected model is then available in Runtime for further project configuration.



# 3. Introduction

The module Batch Control consists of three parts:

 <u>The engineering environment (on page 15) in the zenon Editor:</u> There all units (ISA nomenclature, chapter 4.2.5: units) with their phases (ISA - 5.1.2.4: phases) and reactions are created. The phases must have an equivalent in the control (ISA: equipment control) which is called process action according to ISA.

Batch Control reflects the physical model in accordance with ISA 4.2 as flat hierarchical level based on units.

The other levels of the model such as process cell, area, plant, etc. were deliberately forgone. When creating the batch recipes too, only the lowest level (phases) of the ISA structure model 5.1 and operations were implemented. Additional levels such as unit procedures and procedures are not available.

- <u>PFC editor (on page 143) and Matrix editor (on page 178):</u> With the help of these editors, master recipes in zenon Runtime (ISA: master recipes) are created. The control recipes that can be executed (ISA: control recipes) are derived from these (see also ISA 5.3.1.). During the process the exact status of the Batch recipe is displayed in the respective editor and you can interfere in the recipe process.
- 3. <u>Recipe Execution Engine (on page 213) (REE):</u> The REE is directly integrated in the zenon Runtime and executes a Batch recipe automatically in the background. Via commands such as **Start, Pause**, **Stop** etc. the user can control the REE. There are three possible modes: Automatic, Semi-automatic and Manual.

# SPECIAL FEATURES OF MODULE BATCH CONTROL:

In contrast to most other zenon modules, a large part of the engineering - the recipe creation - is done in the Runtime and not in the Editor. This entails special features which are dealt with in the respective chapter. So for example changed phases are no longer transferred to an already released master recipe in order to prevent unwanted data changes.

The module is designed in a way which makes it completely independent of the control. This means that the data communication take place via all available zenon drivers with any PLCs or even RTUs. They only execute the process actions. The entire recipe processing is done at the computer in the REE. For changes on the Batch recipe or for new master recipes, no modifications are necessary in the PLC code.

The module follows the strict separation between the procedure of the batch recipe (ISA: Procedural Control Model) and execution of the technological function (ISA: Process Model) as describe in ISA–S88, chapter 5.2.1.



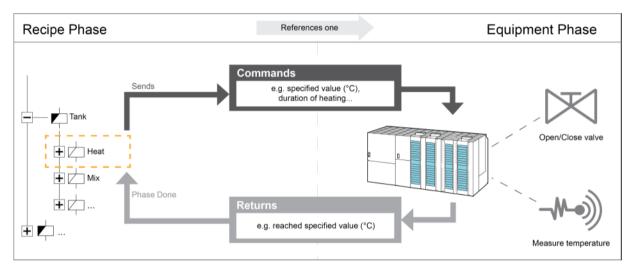
#### PRINCIPLE STRUCTURE OF THE COMMUNICATION

For the communication with the process standard zenon variables are used. As variable names often have a very technical and thus difficult-to-read label, an additional abstraction level was introduced. It contains the tags which are available in two types:

- Command tags: They are used to transfer set values to the PLC when a phase is executed.
- Return tags: They are used to return values from the PLC for evaluation.

With both tag types values can be both written (e.g. in reactions) and also read (e.g. in conditions).

#### Schema:



The PLC communicates with the zenon driver. The driver communicates with the zenon Runtime. The Runtime sends the values to the REE where they are processed. The REE internally works asynchronously to the zenon Runtime in a 100 ms cycle.

#### NETWORK

The module **Batch Control** is fully capable of using a network in terms of Client/Server technology. This means that Batch recipes can be created, duplicated, edited, deleted, etc. on a Client. The whole recipe management remains always on the server. Likewise the whole process control such as **start** recipe, **pause** recipe, **stop** recipe, etc. can be done from the Client. Also mode changes and manual operations such as **jump** are possible.

## Attention

Module Batch Control does not support redundancy. There is no synchronization between Standby Server. When the Server breaks down, the executed Batch recipes are not continued on the Standby! Recipes can also be started whilst the configured Server 2 is the primary server.



# 4. Terminology

In the zenon module Batch Control the following terms are used:



Term	Definition
Unit	Physically available machine or equipment part with which phases can be carried out. (ISA 88: Unit)
Releasing the unit	Element of module Batch Control which cancels the allocation of a unit in the unit manager. With this the unit can be allocated by another recipe again.
Unit allocation	Element of module Batch Control which causes the allocation of a unit in the unit manager. An allocated unit can only be used by phases with the recipe. With this the unit is locked for phases of other recipes which are executed parallel.
Unit manager	Internal management mechanism which manages the unit allocation for all REE's in the Runtime.
Action	Used in <b>Batch Control</b> : all commands which are used for editing a recipe e.g. insert phase, testing recipes etc.
Begin parallel branch	Element that ensures the separation of the recipe process in two or more branches.
Begin branch	Element that makes it possible to separate a recipe in two or more branches of which only one can be active at a time. Each following branch must start with a transition. The transition defines which branch is executed in the recipe process.
Begin element	Element of module <b>Batch Control</b> with which every recipe begins.
Active element	Position in a recipe in the batch control module where the processing is interrupted in a semi-automatic and manual mode and the active elements are put into a pause status. With the "next step" command, the process is resumed from this position.
Batch Control	Tool for creating master recipes and creating and executing control recipes in accordance with ISA-S88.
Batch operation	Automatic and sequential processing of a stack of single operations.
Command TAGs	Umbrella term for initial and value parameters.
End parallel branch	Element that combines the separation of the recipe process into two or more branches back into one branch.
End branch	Element which brings together a branch started by a begin branch element.
End element	Element of module <b>Batch Control</b> with which every recipe ends.
Phase	Predefined process consisting of input interlocking, command and return tags, a phase done condition, event reactions, etc (ISA 88: Phase)
Initial parameters	Parameter type for default values of the phase. Values are written before



	checking the input lock.
Command	Used in <b>Batch Control</b> : a command which intervenes in the recipe process e.g start, stop, mode change etc.
Matrix recipe	Recipe in the <b>Batch Control</b> module which was created with the Matrix editor.
Parallel branch	Area of module <b>Batch Control</b> . A parallel branch starts with a begin parallel branch element and is brought together with an end simultaneous sequence element to one execution branch. Between there are at least two branches which are executed at the same time.
Parameter	Variable linking for a phase.
PFC recipe	Recipe in the <b>batch control</b> module, which was created with the PFC Editor
REE - Recipe Execution Engine	Part of module <b>Batch Control</b> for process control of recipes. The engine executes a control recipe and manages the entire process of the recipe.
Recipe	In recipes related data such as machine parameters or format data are summed up. This data can be transferred from the control system to the control and vice versa in one step. We differentiate between standard recipes and RGM recipes. The procedure is defined additionally to data in <b>Batch Control</b> Module in a recipe. It is distinguished between Matrix recipe and PFC Recipe.
Return tag	Parameter type for values that are read from the PLC.



Jump target	Element of the <b>Batch Control</b> module which allows a direct jump to a defined location of a branch.
Control recipe	Part of the <b>Batch Control</b> module. Contains the process of a production process on basis of the batch process according to standard ISA S88. A control recipe is always derived from a template recipe and can be implemented once only. (ISA 88: Control recipe)
Operation	Recipes can be divided into individual parts within the batch control module. Operation management takes place via a central library. Instances of operations can be added within the recipe. Tags of the applied phase can be edited, the structure can only be edited in the operation template.
Transition	Element of module <b>Batch Control</b> which contains a condition. The element is used after phases in order to ensure a defined transition from one phase to another.
Connection line	Part of the connector in the <b>Batch Control</b> module: Positions the connection point at the element.
Connection point	Part of the connection element in the <b>Batch Control</b> module. Connects two elements to each other (e.g. phase to phase or phase to line). It changes color when the mouse pointer is on it.
Connection element	A possibility in <b>Batch Control</b> to connect elements to one another. It consists of a connection point and a connection line.
Branch	Area of module <b>Batch Control</b> which ensures a separation in two or more branches, of which only one can be active at the recipe process. It is an either/or branch. A branch always starts with the Begin branch and ends with the End branch element.
Master recipe	Part of the <b>Batch Control</b> module. Contains the process of a production process on basis of the batch process according to standard ISA S88. A recipe consists of the following components: Phases, transitions, parallel branch, etc (ISA 88: Master recipe). Master recipes are used as templates for control recipes.
Value parameter	Parameter type for default values of the phase. Values are written after the input lock has been successfully checked.
Branch	Execution area for the <b>Batch Control</b> Module Basic functions, transitions and transfer targets can be placed on it.



# 5. Procedure

The engineering and the use of module Batch Control takes place in three main steps:

- 1. Engineering in the zenon Editor
- 2. Recipe creation in the Batch editor (PFC or matrix) in the Runtime
- 3. Recipe execution in the Runtime

## ENGINEERING

The engineer depicts the existing physical world in the Editor. He defines and creates units (on page 16) and assigns phases (on page 21) with tags (on page 24) to them.

## **RECIPE CREATION**

In the Runtime the recipe creator defines the master recipes on base of the presets from the Editor. They define the process. At this only the units, phases and tags defined in the engineering environment can be used.

**Exception:** If you activate property **Parameter value can be changed in master recipe** in group **Write set value** in the Editor, you can modify the corresponding tag. This is only possible for command tags.

#### **RECIPE EXECUTION**

The operator executes the recipe in the Runtime. For this he starts a control recipe which is based on the control recipe. Each control recipe can only be started and used once. With this it can be assigned to a lot unambiguously. Recipes run either automatically, semi-automatically or manually.

The operator cannot influence the recipes.

**Exception:** If the recipe creator activates option (on page 157) **Changeable in the control recipe**, the operator can edit tags in the Runtime.

# 6. Engineering in the Editor

To use module Batch Control in the Runtime, you must do the following in the Editor:

- create units (on page 16), phases (on page 21) and reactions (on page 34)
- create a screen (on page 50) of type Batch Control
- create a screen switch function (on page 63) for the screen of type Batch Control

Note: In the editor, copying and inserting of elements throughout all levels is possible.



#### DETAIL VIEW

In module Batch Control the detail view divided in two:

- The left part features the unit tree. The entry **Unit** is the starting point of the tree. On the next level the existing units are displayed. The phase belonging to each unit follow. Each phase has the subitem reactions.
- ► In the right part a flat list of the units, phases, tags or reactions is displayed depending on what level is chosen on the left side.

# 6.1 Units

To create a new unit:

- 1. in the project manager go to node Batch Control
- 2. in the detail view select Unit
- 3. in the context menu select menu item New unit
- 4. a new unit is created in the detail view

# 6.1.1 Toolbar unit tree

The toolbar corresponds to the complete unit tree. Depending in the selected element symbols are available or deactivated.

🛃 🖻 🔭 🗙 | 韶 🖌 🛲 🦉 | 🥑



Parameter	Description
Rename	Opens the name filed of the selected element for renaming.
	Not available for main node <b>Units</b> .
Сору	Copies the selected unit to the clipboard.
	Not available for main node <b>Units</b> .
Paste	Pastes a unit that was copied to the clipboard.
Delete	Deletes selected element after confirmation message.
	Not available for main node <b>Units</b> .
Expand all	Displays the entire tree structure.
	By clicking on the arrow you receive a drop-down list in which you can select one of the following commands:
	Expand all: expands all nodes
	<ul> <li>Collapse all: collapses all nodes</li> </ul>
	Expand selected: expands all selected nodes
	<ul> <li>Collapse selected: collapses all selected nodes</li> </ul>
	A click on the button always expands all elements.
	Via double click on the superordinate entry elements can also be expanded or collapsed.
Export all units to XML	Exports all units as an XML file.
Import units from XML	Imports units from an XML file.
Help	Opens online help.

# 6.1.2 Project tree - Batch Control context menu

Parameter	Description
New unit	Creates a new unit.
Export all as XML	Exports all units as an XML file.
Import XML	Imports units from an XML file.
Editor profile	Opens the drop-down list with predefined editor profiles.
Help	Opens online help.



# 6.1.3 Context menu units

Right click the main entry **Unit** in the unit tree to open a context menu:

Menu item	Action
New unit	Creates a new unit.
Replace linking in phases	Opens the dialog to replace linking (on page 47) for linking in phases.
Replace linking in units	Opens the dialog to replace linking (on page 47) for linking in units.
Paste	Pastes a unit that was copied to the clipboard.
Export all units to XML	Exports all units as an XML file.
Import units from XML	Imports units from an XML file.
Help	Opens online help.

# 6.1.4 Context menu unit X

Right click on a created unit in order to open the context menu:

Menu item	Action
New phase	Creates a new phase.
Replace linking in phases	Opens the dialog to replace linking (on page 47) for linking in phases.
Replace linking in unit	Opens the dialog to replace linking (on page 47) for linking in the selected unit.
Rename	Allows you to rename the selected unit.
Delete	Deletes the selected unit.
Сору	Copies the selected unit to the clipboard.
Paste	Pastes a unit that was copied to the clipboard.
Export selected as XML	Exports selected unit as an XML file.
Import phases from XML	Imports phases from an XML file.
Help	Opens online help.



# 6.1.5 Detail view units

# 🍯 🔒 🔒 🚬 🛪 🖌 🥵 🕍 🖤

Menu item	Action
New unit	Creates a new unit in the detail view.
Replace linking in phase	Opens the dialog to replace linking (on page 47) for linking in phases.
Replace linking in units	Opens the dialog to replace linking (on page 47) for linking in units.
Сору	Copies the selected entries to the clipboard.
Paste	Pastes the content from the clipboard. If an entry with the same name already exists, the content is pasted as " <b>Copy of</b> ".
Delete	Deletes selected entries after a confirmation from list.
Remove all filters	Removes all filter settings.
Edit selected cell	Opens the selected cell for editing. The binocular symbol in the header shows which cell has been selected in a highlighted line. Only cells that can be edited can be selected.
Replace text in selected column	Opens the dialog for searching and replacing texts.
Export selected as XML	Exports the selected units as an XML file.
Import units from XML	Imports units from an XML file.
Properties	Opens the <b>Properties</b> window.
Help	Opens online help.

# 6.1.6 Detail view unit X

🧞 🙃 🖻 🛝 🗙 😿 🖌 🤫 📠 🖏 🖆 🌒



Parameter	Description
New phase	Creates a new phase in the detail view.
Replace links	Opens the dialog to replace linking (on page 47) for linking in phases.
Сору	Copies the selected entries to the clipboard.
Paste	Pastes the content from the clipboard. If an entry with the same name already exists, the content is pasted as " <b>Copy of</b> ".
Delete	Deletes selected entries after a confirmation from list.
Remove all filters	Removes all filter settings.
Edit selected cell	Opens the selected cell for editing. The binocular symbol in the header shows which cell has been selected in a highlighted line. Only cells that can be edited can be selected.
Replace text in selected cell	Opens the dialog for searching and replacing texts.
Export selected as XML	Exports the selected phases as an XML file.
Import phases from XML	Imports phases from an XML file.
Properties	Opens the <b>Properties</b> window.
Help	Opens online help.

# 6.1.7 Information in Runtime

Information on individual units can be called up and displayed using variables. Each element to be allocated initializes the values of the linked variables with 0 or empty text. The information comes from the recipe that allocates the unit when the query takes place. Variables are always only filled in the event of a change.

The variables for the information desired in Runtime is configured in the unit properties in the **Runtime information** group for:

- Master recipe: Information on ID, name and description of the master recipe, as well as version (on page 187) and initial version.
- Control recipe: Information on ID, name, description and job ID of the control recipe.
- Execution: Information on the number of active recipes and execution status and mode, numerically and as a text respectively.

**Note:** The value for **Number of active recipes** is generally 0 or 1. If a higher number is displayed, then the start of other recipes was forced manually.

Phases: Information on active phases. If the phase is in an operation, the name of the operation is displayed in brackets.



- Error: Errors are shown visually in Runtime and saved in logs. A process error in the unit is shown visually this way and the absolute number of historical procedure errors is also displayed. The counter is increased by 1 as soon as a procedure error occurs. If the phase is restarted, the historic error goes from the display; it is no longer signalized visually. The logged information is retained however. The same applies to communication failures: Symbols only display active errors; counters also inform you of historic errors.
- Matrix information: Display of the active steps in a matrix recipe. It is always the information from the main recipe that is used, even if the trigger object is in an operation. All numerical variables whose data type >= 2 byte can be selected.
   PFC recipes always receive empty values or 0.

## EXECUTION STATUS AND EXECUTION MODE OF VALUES

Values for variables of the Execution status (numeric) and Execution mode (numeric) are in the Variable allocation (on page 71)/General (on page 78) chapter.

#### INFORMATION IN RECIPES AND UNIT

When restarting after Runtime has been restarted, the respective status is stored with the information in the recipes.

For example: Paused after normal shutdown or Held after incorrect shutdown.

The execution status is also displayed in the unit information. The **execution status (numerical and text)** in the unit information contains a number and a text that corresponds to that of the variables in the screen. Including information on whether triggered by a restart, information on objects with a different status and objects that delay a status change.

Attention: The content of these variables is not compatible between zenon 7.10 and 7.11.

# 6.2 Phases

The phase is the execution object of a recipe - and therefore its main component. Each phase in module Batch Control must stand facing a **Technological function** in the control.

Example: You want to heat up a tank.

For this you need:

- 1. The corresponding equipment: a heating in the tank.
- 2. A temperature sensor which measures the actual temperature in the tank. Connect this sensor with a control.
- 3. A program in the controller that controls the heating until the set temperature is reached. This control program is the **process action** in the PLC. They:



- has an input tag: a set temperature which is implemented via a command tag (on page 26) in Batch Control
- needs an output tag also a set temperature which must be reached and which is implemented via a return tag (on page 27) in Batch Control

To inform the control about the progress of the recipe, you need corresponding status information which is transferred to the control. For this you use reactions (on page 34) and conditions (on page 31) for the response.

A phase therefore consists of:

Туре	Description
Command TAGs (on page 26)	The set values which should be transferred to the control
Return TAG (on page 27)	The response values which inform the REE about the status of the <b>process action</b> in the control. They can be evaluated in conditions and transitions.
Reactions (on page 34)	REE events can be used on the one hand to inform the <b>process action</b> in the control about the state of the REE and on the other hand to inform the user about errors (e.g. time outs, invalid tag values). time outs, invalid tag values).
Conditions (on page 31)	Are used for the evaluation of the return tags: The state of the <b>process action</b> in the control is evaluated.
Times (on page 34)	Time critical processes can be monitored with this. If the engineered time is exceeded, an event is triggered on which you can react with a reaction.

#### ENGINEERING

To create a new phase:

- 1. select the unit for the phase or first create the desired unit
- 2. in the context menu select menu item New phase
- 3. a new phase is shown in the detail view
- 4. the subitem **Reactions** is automatically added to the phase

# Information

If several phases are selected in the Editor at once whose formulas are identical but whose tags are different, this is not displayed by color coding the different values.



# 6.2.1 Context menu phase

# CONTEXT MENU PHASE X

Right click on a created phase in order to open a context menu for creating the parameters:

Parameter	Description
New initial tag	Creates a new initial tag (on page 26).
New value tag	Creates a new value tag (on page 26).
New return tag	Creates a new return tag (on page 27).
Replace linking in phase	Opens the dialog to replace linking (on page 47) for linking in phases.
Rename	Makes it possible to change the name of the currently selected phase.
Delete	Deletes the currently selected phase after a confirmation message.
Сору	Copies the selected element to the clipboard.
Paste	Pastes an element script that was copied to the clipboard.
Export selected as XML	Exports the selected phases as an XML file.
Help	Opens online help.

# 6.2.2 Detail view phase

🍻 🏧 🏠 🗎 🖹 🗙 😿 🏅 🤨 📑 🥑



Parameter	Description
New initial tag	Creates a new initial tag (on page 26).
New value tag	Creates a new value tag (on page 26).
New return tag	Creates a new return tag in the detail view.
Replace links	Opens the dialog to replace links (on page 47).
Сору	Copies the selected entries to the clipboard.
Paste	Pastes the content from the clipboard. If an entry with the same name already exists, the content is pasted as " <b>Copy of</b> ".
Delete	Deletes selected entries after a confirmation from list.
Remove all filters	Removes all filter settings.
Edit selected cell	Opens the selected cell for editing. The binocular symbol in the header shows which cell has been selected in a highlighted line. Only cells that can be edited can be selected.
Replace text in selected column	Opens the dialog for searching and replacing texts.
Properties	Opens the <b>Properties</b> window.
Help	Opens online help.

# 6.3 Parameter

TAGs are the communication interface to the control. With them all values are transferred to the control and also read back. To not have to work with complex and for the user incomprehensible variable names in module Batch Control, the abstract level is used. Each tag consists - for each phase - of a unique name and a description. In this, the engineer can give the recipe creator or user a description of what the tag is used for or which effects it has.

You can add any number of tags to a phase. We distinguish between command tags (on page 26) and return tags (on page 27). Command parameters are further subdivided into initial parameters and value parameters. Each tag can be switched between command and return tag at any time.

## CHANGING VALUES IN RUNTIME

Set values can be configured as fixed or as changeable in Runtime. Parameter values can be amended in Runtime if the Type has been set to Initial or Value.

To configure values as changeable in Runtime:

1. Activate the checkbox for the Parameter value can be changed in master recipe property.



- 2. Decide whether the values for minimum and maximum will also be able to be changed.
- 3. To do this, activate or deactivate the IsEditableLimitsInRecipeLocal checkbox.

You can read information on changing the values in the Editing parameters (on page 157).

#### LIMIT VALUES FOR COMMAND TAGS

Values for command tags can be limited with a minimum value and a maximum value. Only values that are within this range can be used in Runtime.

The minimum and maximum values for command tags can be defined using:

- Properties in the editor: The minimum value and maximum value are stipulated with the Min. value and Max. value properties.
- Linked variables:

The **Variable for min. value** and **Variable for max. value** properties can be used to define variables that dynamically stipulate the limit values for the minimum value and maximum value in Runtime. The variable values are read once when loading or reloading a recipe and applied to the master recipe.

# 6.3.1 Detail view tag

Toolbar and context menu provide commands to create and administer variables of parameters.

🚋 🏧 🏠 🗎 🖹 🔭 🗙 🧒 🎽 🔍



Parameter	Description
New initial tag	Creates a new initial parameter in the detail view.
New value tag	Creates a value parameter in the detail view.
New return tag	Creates a new return tag in the detail view.
Replace links	Opens the dialog to replace links (on page 47).
Сору	Copies the selected entries to the clipboard.
Paste	Pastes the content from the clipboard. If an entry with the same name already exists, the content is pasted as " <b>Copy of</b> ".
Delete	Deletes selected entries after a confirmation from list.
Remove all filters	Removes all filter settings.
Edit selected cell	Opens the selected cell for editing. The binocular symbol in the header shows which cell has been selected in a highlighted line. Only cells that can be edited can be selected.
Replace text in selected column	Opens the dialog for searching and replacing texts.
Properties	Opens the <b>Properties</b> window.
Help	Opens online help.

# 6.3.2 Command TAGs

Command parameters transfer information and values to the controller. They can be subdivided into:

- Initial parameters: Command parameters that are set before the start event. They transfer information that must be stored before setting the input lock in the controller, for example, which control strategy (on page 44) is executed.
- ► Value parameter: Command parameters that are sent after input locking when the phase is executed.

Command tags contain the set values which should be transferred to the control. Initial parameters and value parameter are validated and written (on page 234) to the controller. You can find the exact description in chapter: Process of a phase in detail (on page 228).

Command tags can also be used in transitions (on page 31), conditions (on page 31) and reactions (on page 34). Initial parameters and value parameters can have the same variable linked. This is taken into account when validating for multiple use of a variable.

Command parameters have a number of properties which can be defined via the property window. For this, the following applies:

• Each tag must be linked with a variable.



- The data type of the variable must correspond to the data type of the parameter.
- The set value limits of the parameter must be within the set value limits of the variable.

If this is not the case, error messages are created during the validation.

**Hint** to property **Parameter value can be changed in master recipe**: With this you define whether the value of the command TAG may be modified by the creator of the master recipe. If e.g. machine tags should not be changeable in the recipe but defined fixedly, you must deactivate this property.

#### ENGINEERING

To create a new command tag:

- 1. Select the desired phase
- 2. Select, in the context menu, the command New initial parameter or New value parameter
- 3. a new command tag is created in the detail view

#### NOTE ON COMPATIBILITY

If Runtime files are created for zenon version 7.10 or older, the initial parameters and value parameters are treated in the same way as command tags again. Command parameters from zenon 7.10 or earlier are all converted to value parameters.

# 6.3.3 Return TAG

The return tags contain the return values with which the process action of the REE communicate its status. Normally the value is set by the control and evaluated by the REE. Return tags can be evaluated in transitions (on page 31) and conditions (on page 31).

They can also be used like this in reactions (on page 34). In doing so, the values configured in the return parameter are transferred. To do this, they are linked in the reaction properties groups **Allocate tag** and for **Tag write set value** as a target parameter.

#### ENGINEERING

To create a new return tag:

- 1. select the desired phase for which you want to create a new return tag
- 2. in the context menu select menu item New return tag
- 3. a new command tag is created in the detail view



# 6.3.4 Example for status tag

To be able to communicate with the control, you normally need two status tags:

- one in write direction and
- one in read direction

The variable behind these parameters should have a numeric data type such as USINT or UINT. It is recommended that both parameters are executed as a return parameter.

# Information

This may seem illogic for commands in write direction at first glance but has the following background: When executing the phase, all command tags are always set. With this they are visible in the list of command tags and can therefore be edited accidentally. This makes no sense for a command for the control. The goal is not just to communicate a single value to the control as command but to transmit the status of the phase in the recipe.

Especially at the writing of a command tag it makes sense to not simply inform the PLC about the writing but the status when all values have been written and the PLC therefore can start to process the process action.

For this it is best to use the reaction to event Finished writing command tags. At reactions to an event you can also write values to an return tag. The use of return tags for both status tags is therefore recommended.

Here is an example about which values the tags can take on:



Value	Name of the event
0	not defined
1	Phase started
2	Finished writing command tags
3	Phase finished: Phase done condition fulfilled and <b>Minimum execution duration</b> reached (if engineered)
4	Phase deactivated
5-9	Reserve
10	Status change: Pausing
11	Status change: Resuming
12	Status change: Holding
13	Status change: Restarting
14	Status change: Stopping
15	Status change: Aborting
16-19	Reserve
20	Mode change: Automatic
21	Mode change: Semi-automatic
22	Mode change: Manual
23-29	Reserve
30	Exit Runtime initiated
31	Runtime restart
32	Unit allocation not possible
33	Waiting period unit allocation exceeded
34	Input interlocking blocked
35	Waiting period input interlocking exceeded
36	Maximum execution period exceeded
37	Waiting period following condition exceeded
38	Phase started multiple times

# STATUS TAG IN WRITE DIRECTION (TO THE PLC): COMMANDS

You can find the exact meaning of the events in the Event type (on page 37) chapter.

For each entry in the table you define a corresponding reaction for writing the status value at the phase. Hint: Use the same tag label for all phases; e.g. StatusPhase. Then you only have to engineer the



reaction at one phase and can then transfer it to all phases via copy & paste. You can of course also copy the tags. Do not forget to correct the variable. They must match the respective phase.

Value Description Linked in property 0 - 1 Not defined 2 Process action finished Phase done condition 3 - 9 Reserve 10 Paused Process action paused 11 Reserve 12 Held Process action held 13 Restarted Process action restarted 14 Stopped Process action stopped 15 Aborted Process action aborted

TAG IN READ DIRECTION (FROM THE PLC): RETURN VALUES

Link the values with a formula in the respective property.

**Hint:** You can copy the formula and just change the respective value. If you set this setting at the start of setting the parameters, you can copy the entire phase and with that have these settings for all phases.

# 6.3.5 Execution period

The execution duration is controlled via two independent properties. Their values must not complement one another.

### MAXIMUM EXECUTION DURATION

The Maximum execution duration refers to Phase deactivated and therefore to the process. It is not connected to the Minimum execution duration.

#### MINIMUM EXECUTION DURATION

Property **Minimum execution duration** defines how long zenon waits after writing the command tag independent of the check of the phase done condition. During the execution the maximum execution duration is checked. An event is triggered if this is exceeded. This can be linked to a reaction. This



happens regardless of whether the phase still checks its **Phase done condition** or only waits for the **Minimum execution duration**.

The length of the minimum execution duration can exceed the maximum execution duration.

#### EXAMPLE

- There is a phase: Start mixing. The confirmation that the mixer runs must not take longer than 5 seconds before a warning of an error is displayed.
   Engineering: Property Maximum execution duration gets value 5 seconds with corresponding reaction.
- ► The mixer however should run 15 minutes before the next phase is executed. Engineering: Property Minimum execution duration gets value 15 minutes.

With this the minimum execution duration is 15 minutes and the maximum execution duration 5 seconds.

# 6.4 Conditions

The conditions are used to inform the REE of the status of the **technological function** in the controller. For evaluating the conditions formulas are used which were created with the formula editor (on page 258).

**Hint:** Use a single status tag (return tag) which takes on different values in order to transmit the status of the **process action** in the control to the phase. You can find an example in chapter Example for status parameter (on page 28).

#### ENGINEERING

To create a new condition:

- 1. Click on the corresponding phase.
- 2. In the properties select the desired conditions from node General or Condition transient status.
- 3. Click in the field for the value or on button ... .

The formula editor is started.

4. Define the formula (on page 258) for the condition.

**Note**: The counterpart to the conditions are the reactions (on page 34). With them, the execution status is transferred to the technological functions of the controller.



#### GENERAL

The following are available as general conditions:

Input interlocking

With the help of an input interlocking the phase is only executed in the Runtime when the condition for the input interlocking is fulfilled.

The input interlocking is configured via the property **Input interlocking**. Via the formula editor (on page 258) the condition is defined which the input interlocking must fulfill. The formula can consist of one or more command tags and return tags of the phase. Value and status of the variables can also be used. The formula returns **TRUE** or **FALSE** as result. The condition can be displayed in the Runtime but cannot be changed there. The waiting period for the input interlocking is configured with the help of property **Waiting period input interlocking**.

A phase is executed as soon as the following conditions are met:

- the phase is active
- the unit is allocated
- the phase is not already executed
- All necessary variables have received a value

The input lock condition is met, if one has been defined

**Note:**You can find more information about input interlockings in chapter Processing a phase in detail (on page 228).

Phase done condition

Once all value tags have written successfully, a phase checks the phase done condition. The phase can only be concluded and the recipe continued if the **Phase done condition** has been met. This is configured using the **Phase done condition** property. The condition to be met is defined using the formula editor (on page 258).

The formula:

- Can consist of one or more command tags and/or return tags of the phase.
- Can use the value and status of the variables

Returns TRUE or FALSE as a result.

The condition can be displayed in the Runtime but cannot be changed there. The waiting period for the phase done condition is configured with the property **Maximum execution duration**.

#### TRANSIENT STATES

As transitions the following properties are available

► Paused

Within the phase the process stops at:

• Waiting for Finished



- Waiting for allocation
- Waiting for interlocking
- Waiting for Phase finished
- Check for parallel execution
- Held Within the phase the process stops at:
  - Waiting for Finished
  - Waiting for allocation
  - Waiting for interlocking
  - Waiting for Phase finished
  - Check for parallel execution
- Stopped
- ► Aborted

►

- **Restarted** Phase is completely restarted.
- ► Escape condition

If this condition is met, the current execution step is stopped and the phase is exited. You can find details in the Exiting a phase (on page 231) chapter.

#### VARIABLES

Transfer conditions are defined with parameters that are linked to variables. They determine when the phase switches the status.

The status changes is delayed until:

- Each variable has a value
- ► The formula is TRUE
- There is no variable with an invalid status

If no condition is defined, the status change is always allowed.

All variables for the status change are requested at the advising of the variables in order to receive a value as soon as possible. The value for a variable which define a status change is read on the change to the transient status. A possible pulse must have value **TRUE** within the waiting period in order to be recognized.

Note: When closing the Runtime, it is not waited for the variable for the status change from stopping to stopped as at this time all variables are already signed off.



# 6.4.1 Waiting periods

The recipe creator can define waiting periods. The configuration of waiting periods (time outs) prevents that time-critical processes take too long because of unforeseen events. If the condition is not fulfilled within the defined waiting period, a corresponding event (on page 37) is triggered. With the reactions (on page 42) you can react on the event and influence the recipe process.

For all waiting periods the following is true:

- ► If Od 00:00:00 is defined as waiting period, the event is not triggered.
- ► The waiting periods are independent of the recipe status (e.g. Recipe paused) and continue to run even when the Runtime is closed and restarted.
- ▶ If a phase is held and restarted, the waiting periods are also restarted.
- ▶ If a phase is passed through several times, the waiting periods are started again for every pass.
- Waiting periods themselves do not influence the process. They are simply used to generate an event. The reaction must be defined in the event. After the event is triggered, it is still waited for the fulfillment of the condition.

# 6.5 Reactions

Reactions are the most important piece to influence the recipe process and to communicate with the control. Reactions are always based on events. These can be REE events (e.g.: Phase started), as well as general events (e.g. Exit Runtime initiated). With the help of reactions you can e.g. tell the control when a phase has been started or finished in the REE and when all command tags have been written.

Likewise you must transfer the status of the phase to the control with the help of the reactions. Otherwise the control has no information about the process of the recipe.

**Example:** If you stop the REE or the phase, the event Status change: Stop will be triggered. As reaction you can transfer this status change as set value input to the control. Only then can the control react and stop the **process action**. You can find an example in chapter Example for status parameter (on page 28).

**Note**: The counterpart to the reactions are the conditions (on page 31). With them the states of the process action in the control is transferred to the REE.

#### ENGINEERING

With each phase the node **Reactions** is created automatically. In this node you can created any reactions. To create a new reaction:

1. click on reactions



- 2. in the context menu select menu item New reaction
- 3. a new reaction is shown in the detail view
- 4. in the detail view click on the entry in column Event
- 5. select the desired event from the drop-down list and define the desired reaction type (on page 42) in the property window.

For each event several reactions are possible. They are sorted at the triggering and are executed in accordance to their priority. At this 1 is the highest priority. Reactions of the same type can only be re-sorted using the toolbar or context menu (on page 36).

Some of the reactions are triggered only once in the process - e.g. time outs. If the phase is restarted, these reactions are also retriggered if necessary.

Reactions can only use tags of their own phase. If reactions are copied from other phases, they try to use tags with the same name of the name phase.

#### **PROJECT CONFIGURATION RULES**

- Reactions can appear in each object state.
- ► For each event several reactions are possible. They are sorted at the triggering and are executed in accordance to their priority. At this 1 is the highest priority.
- All variables of all parameters are signed in to the driver for reading. If a value is needed at a reaction but is not yet available or invalid, the alternate value is written. The writing of the value is done without write confirmation.
- Some of the reactions are triggered only once in the process e.g. time outs. If the phase is restarted, these reactions are also retriggered if necessary.

#### **BEHAVIOR IN RUNTIME**

For each reaction, a range of actions can be configured in the **Reactions** properties group, such as **Tag write set value**, **Function**, **Allocate tag** or **Recipe influence**. For example, in order to change the REE mode after restarting Runtime, or when writing to execute an REE command when writing command parameters.

In doing so, please note:

- The execution of this function in Runtime can be prevented by other events. For example, the status of the phase can prevent the execution of an action.
- Several different reactions are processed in the same execution cycle. However, only one REE command per cycle is permitted. In general, the last REE command is executed.

**Note:** Actions of reactions are logged in the CEL if the Create CEL entry property has been activated for the reaction. System is entered as a user.



# 6.5.1 Context menu reactions unit tree

Parameters	Description
New reaction	Creates a new reaction in the detail view.
Replace links	Opens the dialog to replace links (on page 47).
Paste	Pastes the content from the clipboard. If an entry with the same name already exists, the content is pasted as " <b>Copy of</b> ".
Help	Opens online help.

# 6.5.2 Detail view reactions

## 🄁 | 화 화 화 | 🎧 🗈 🗶 | 🛪 | 🗹 🧐 🔮 🎱

Parameter	Description
New reaction	Creates a new reaction in the detail view.
Execution order: Earlier	For reactions of the same type: Moves the reaction forward in the execution order.
Execution order: Later	For reactions of the same type: Moves the reaction backward in the execution order.
Execution order: Change places	Only active if exactly two reactions are chosen. The two selected reactions change their places in the execution order.
Replace links	Opens the dialog to replace links (on page 47).
Сору	Copies the selected entries to the clipboard.
Paste	Pastes the content from the clipboard. If an entry with the same name already exists, the content is pasted as " <b>Copy of</b> ".
Delete	Deletes selected entries after a confirmation from list.
Remove all filters	Removes all filter settings.
Edit selected cell	Opens the selected cell for editing. The binocular symbol in the header shows which cell has been selected in a highlighted line. Only cells that can be edited can be selected.
Replace text in selected column	Opens the dialog for searching and replacing texts.
Properties	Opens the <b>Properties</b> window.
Help	Opens online help.



# 6.5.3 Events

Each reaction is a reaction to an event. The event is defined in property Event. For each event several reactions can be defined. The execution order can be defined in the detail view.

When validating the recipe in Runtime, the name of the event is displayed in the event of an error. Syntax: (event name.x) whereby event name corresponds to the Event. x is a number that indicates the position in the execution sequence.

From the drop-down list you can select the following events:



Event	Description
Procedure	Events in the procedure.
Phase activated	Is the first event which is triggered.
	With this event, you tell the PLC that the phase has been activated in the REE and that the phase is expected to be started soon.
Unit allocation not possible	Is triggered if the unit was not allocated successfully at first try.
Phase started	With this event you tell the PLC that the phase has been started in the REE and that it is likely that the command tags will be written soon.
	Other events can be executed before the event if the <b>Allow execution before start event</b> has been activated for the corresponding event. For details, see the <b>Allow execution started before phase started</b> section.
Input interlocking blocked	Is triggered if the input lock has been successfully locked. Then the interlocking is not executed.
	Makes only sense if property <b>Input interlocking</b> was configured.
Input lock checked successfully	Is triggered if the checking of the input interlocking is applicable at the first check. The interlocking is executed.
	Makes only sense if property <b>Input interlocking</b> was configured.
Finished writing value tags	Is triggered if all command tags have been written. It cannot be guaranteed however that really all tags arrived at the control. It depends on the communication and the respective driver. It can however be assumed.
	<b>Recommendation:</b> Use this event to tell the PLC that the phase has written all command tags and the PLC can start processing the process actions.
Phase done condition completed	Is triggered if the phase is finished. This event is the last reaction of the phase and independent of the reason of the finishing. With this the phase done condition is fulfilled.
	This event is also triggered at a restart.
Phase deactivated	Is triggered if the phase was started and now is finished.



Timeout	Timeout events.		
Phase started multiple times	A phase can only be active once. If it is activated several time in parallel, this event is triggered.		
Waiting period unit allocation exceeded	Is triggered if the waiting duration for the unit allocation runs. Can also occur during Paused and Held.		
Waiting period input interlocking exceeded	Is triggered if the waiting duration (time out) for the input interlocking expired.		
	Makes only sense if a Input interlocking was defined.		
Command tag without value	Is triggered if the command tag should be toggled and the variable linked to the tag does not have a valid initial value.		
Maximum execution period exceeded	Is triggered if the waiting duration (time out) for waiting for the phase done condition (Finished) was exceeded.		
Waiting period following condition exceeded	Is triggered if the phase was not finished within the scheduled waiting duration (time out) although the phase done condition was fulfilled.		
Linked variable invalid	<ul> <li>If the value of a variable with status INVALID should be used, this event is created once per invalid variable and phase.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>If the variable status changed from INVALID to not INVALID and back to INVALID, the reaction is again triggered when the variable is used.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>If the phase is restarted, the event is triggered again when an invalid variable is used.</li> </ul>		
	At the following activities it is checked for invalid variable:		
	<ul> <li>Source variable in reaction</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Variable for phase done condition</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Variable for input interlocking</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Write command tag inversely</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Variables for status change at transient states allowed</li> </ul>		
	Note: In the event of an INVALID, the events are not necessarily processed in the order in which they are received. If an INVALID occurs whilst another event is being processed, this event can overtake the one that is currently being executed.		



Status change	Status change events.		
	If the phase changes its status, the corresponding reaction is activated.		
Status change: In execution	The phase is executed.		
Status change: Pausing	The phase is switched to Paused at the moment.		
Status change: Paused	The phase is paused.		
Status change: Continue	The phase is resuming after a break.		
	A status change in the object from Paused to Running triggers the events Resuming and Running.		
Status change: Holding	The phase is held at the moment.		
Status change: Held	The phase was stopped.		
Status change: Restarting	The phase is restarting at the moment.		
Status change: Stopping	The phase is stopping at the moment.		
Status change: Stopped	The phase was stopped.		
Status change: Aborting	The phase is aborted at the moment.		
Status change: Aborted	The phase was aborted.		
Status change: Executed	The phase is finished.		
Escape condition started	Is triggered if the Escape condition for exiting from a phase is started.		
Escape condition fulfilled	Is triggered if the Escape condition for exiting from a phase is met.		
Mode change	Events in relation to mode change in the REE		
Mode change: Automatic	The REE switched to mode Automatical.		
Mode change: Semi-automatic	The REE was switched to semi-automatic mode.		
Mode change: Manual	The REE switched to mode Manual.		
Close and restart Runtime	Events in relation to closing and restarting Runtime.		
Exit Runtime initiated	Is triggered if the Runtime is exited. This is an especially critical state for the Batch Control module as the recipe process does not stop in the control immediately. Therefor exiting the Runtime is prevented as long as module Batch Control saved all data. A process image is created which can later be used as starting point.		
	Likewise it is made sure that the tags of action <b>Write</b> set value safely arrive at the control. Internally the		



	phase is paused only when the writing confirmation from the driver ensued.
	For more details about existing the Runtime see chapter: Exit and restart Runtime (on page 235).
	At this event no reaction types of group <b>Influencing the recipe</b> are possible.
Runtime restart	The Runtime was restarted.
Interruptions and errors	Events in relation to interruptions and errors in communication and on the PLC.
Loss of communication	This event reports that communication has been interrupted.
Loss of communication fixed	This event reports that the communication failure has been rectified.
Loss of communication acknowledged	This event reports that a displayed communication failure has been acknowledged.
PLC error	Is triggered if there is a PLC error.
PLC error rectified	Is triggered if a PLC error has been rectified.
PLC error rectified by deactivating the phase	Is triggered if there was a PLC error when a phase was ended. This was changed to rectified when it ended. Does not apply for a restart of the phase.

### **EVENTS ON RESTART**

The reactions phase activated, phase started and phase deactivated are always only executed once. These reactions are not triggered again after the phase has been restarted. The phase starts to run again, however it was not executed in full beforehand.

Along the same lines, the reaction phase deactivated is only triggered once the phase has been ended and not during a restart.

The phase started reaction is triggered if the unit allocation and the parallel execution detection has been executed. If the procedure has not exceeded this detection on restart, the reaction is triggered for the Restart command. If the process is already in an advanced state, the reaction is not carried out again.

### ALLOW EXECUTION BEFORE "PHASE STARTED"

Events can be also be approved before the phase started event. To do this, the Allow execution before start event property must be activated for the corresponding event. This property can only be configured



for events that are possible both before and after <code>phase started</code>. The value is automatically set according to type for all other events.

The following events are approved before and after "phase started":

- Mode change
- Status change
- Exit from a phase
- ► Exit Runtime initiated
- Restart Runtime
- Linked variable invalid
- Phase deactivated (can occur before if the phase was exited before phase started)
- Waiting period for subsequent conditions (can occur before if the phase was exited before phase started)
- Communication failures (however only from the point at which the values for the Loss of communication property are waited for)

The following events are only approved before "phase started":

- Phase activated
- Unit allocation
- > Phase started more than once (exclusive execution)

All other events are only approved after the Phase started event.

# 6.5.4 Reaction types

In the properties of the reactions the reaction types more precisely defined and engineered. In group **Reactions** the following reaction types are available:



Reaction type	Description
Tag write set value	Influences command and return tag directly. All tag data types can be used. Attention: The value must be within of the set value limits of the variables which are linked at the tag. If this is not the case, an error message is created during the validation.
CEL entry	Creates an entry in the CEL: With this the reaction can be documented and the recipe process can be tracked later. For this property <b>Create</b> <b>CEL entry</b> must be activated. The text for the CEL is defined in property <b>CEL message text</b> .
	System is entered as a user.
Function	Makes it possible to link any zenon function.
	With this you can e.g. call up a pop-up in order to inform the user about a certain status or start a data backup.
	Note: In the network the function is always executed at the server.
Allocate tag	Makes it possible to perform a value assignment from <b>Source tag</b> to another <b>Target tag</b> . You can use both command tags and return tags. The data type of source and target tag must be identical otherwise an error is displayed at the validation of the recipe.
Recipe influence	Make it possible to:
	<ul> <li>Change the execution mode</li> </ul>
	Execute commands for the REE
	execute phase commands
	With this you can react on serious events such as Waiting duration exceeded or Linked variable invalid.
	<b>Note:</b> Use this reaction type carefully as this reaction type influences the entire recipe process.
	For each event you can only once:
	set the Mode and
	write a single Command
	Because e.g. it does not make sense to pause and hold the recipe at the same time with the same event.
	You can read more about commands in the commands and actions (on page 189) chapter.



# 6.6 Control Strategy

Control strategies make it possible to set parameters for different versions of a phase. Only the command parameters allocated to the control strategy are sent for each control strategy.

## **CONFIGURING CONTROL STRATEGIES**

To use control strategies, these must be activated in the phase. To do this:

- 1. Highlight the desired phase
- 2. Go to property group Control strategies
- 3. Activate the checkbox in front of the Active control strategies property.
- 4. Select a parameter in the **control strategy tag** property. This parameter defines the control strategy that is active in Runtime.
- 5. The phase is thus displayed in the Editor with the **Control strategies** node.
- 6. Right click on the node and select the entry **New control strategy** in the context menu.
- 7. A new control strategy is created.
- 8. Configure the properties of the control strategy. In doing so, note:
  - Name and control strategy number of the control strategy must be unique within the phase.
  - The Name must not be empty, contain a dot, consist of only spaces and must be within a maximum of 256 characters long.
- 9. Add the desired command parameters.

**Note:** Clicking on a parameter add its properties. Only the following properties in the **Write set value** group can be edited:

- Tag value
- Min. value
- Max. value
- Parameter value can be changed in master recipe

All other properties cannot be edited. To edit these, switch to the parameter list of the phase.

### **COPYING CONTROL STRATEGIES**

Control strategies can be copied using commands in the context menu and the toolbar and inserted into the same or other phases.



If control strategies are copied throughout phases, units or a project, only the parameter linkings that are also to be triggered in the new phase are inserted. In doing so, the conditions are the same as for inserting parameter linking (on page 46).

# 6.6.1 Control strategies node context menu

Right-clicking on the **Control strategies** node opens a context menu with the following entries:

Parameters	Description	
New Control strategy	Creates a new control strategy	
Paste control strategy	Pastes a control strategy from the clipboard.	
	Copied control strategies are adapted when pasted into a phase so that Name and control strategy number are made unique, if this is not already the case in the phase.	
Help	Opens online help.	

# 6.6.2 Context menu selected control strategy

Right-clicking on the control strategy opens a context menu with the following entries:

Parameter	Description
Add command parameters	Opens the dialog to select command parameters (on page 264).
Insert parameter linking	Inserts parameters that have been copied from a different control strategy to the selected control strategy. Note: Copy the parameters to the control strategy list.
Rename	Highlights the name to be renamed.
Delete	Deletes the selected control strategy after a confirmation message.
Сору	Copies the selected control strategy. This can be pasted using <b>Paste</b> in the context menu of the <b>Control strategies</b> node. Copied control strategies are adapted when pasted into a phase so that <b>Name</b> and <b>control strategy number</b> are made unique, if this is not already the case in the phase.
Help	Opens online help.



# 6.6.3 Toolbar and control strategy list context menu

Entries in the control strategy list can be edited using symbols or entries in the context menu.

🎭 🗈 🖹 🗙 🖉 🖉 🖉

The following are available in the context menu and the toolbar:

Parameter	Description
Add command parameters	Opens the dialog to select command parameters (on page 264).
Сору	Copies the selected entries to the clipboard.
Paste	Pastes the content from the clipboard. If an entry with the same name already exists, the content is pasted as " <b>Copy</b> of".
Delete	Deletes selected entries after a confirmation from list.
Remove all filters	Removes all filter settings.
Edit selected cell	Opens the selected cell for editing. The binocular symbol in the header shows which cell has been selected in a highlighted line. Only cells that can be edited can be selected.
Properties	Opens the <b>Properties</b> window.
Help	Opens online help.

# 6.6.4 Parameter

## LINKING PARAMETERS

There are different methods available to link parameters to a control strategy:

- To do this, select the Add command parameter command in the context menu of the control strategy.
- Select, in the detail view of the control strategies in the toolbar or in the context menu of a parameter, the Add command parameter command.
- ► Drag the parameter from the parameter list of the phase by dragging & dropping it onto the control strategy. Only command parameters (on page 26) are linked.

**Note:** If a parameter is deleted for a phase, the attendant parameter linking is also deleted for all control strategies.



#### DELETING OR RESTORING LINKED VALUES

Parameters of the control strategies take on the values of the parameters with which they are linked. This linking can be deleted by:

- Overwriting the value
- Separating the linking via the context menu

The context menu can also be used to restore the link to the source parameter again.

You can read details on linked values in the Linked properties chapter in the Editor manual.

### **COPYING PARAMETERS**

Existing parameter linking can be copied between control strategies. Copying is possible throughout via phases, units and projects. When inserting parameter linkings, an attempt is made to link the names accordingly. No new parameters are created.

Insertion is not possible if there is no parameter with the copied name in the target phase or the corresponding parameter is already part of the control strategy.

# 6.7 Replace links

Linking of variables and functions can be replaced automatically in units, phases and reactions. This process corresponds to the process for **replacing linking for screen switching** and **replacing linking in the Editor screen.** 

The following can be replaced:

- ▶ Units: linked variables for Runtime information
- ► Reactions: linked functions
- Parameter: linked variables

To replace elements:

1. Select the **Replace linking** command in the context menu or the toolbar



Enter element ×		
Replace links		
Source (with " or '?): Target:	ОК	
Accept	Cancel	
Tank1* Tank2 all variables and functions starting with Tank1 are replaced with Tank2	Help	
e.g: Tank1temperature with Tank2temperature		
Case sensitive Variable / function		
Name     Identification		
Source Target		

2. The dialog for the replacement of links opens.



Property	Description	
Source	Enter the partial string to be searched for.	
	Place holder * and <b>?</b> can be used. Placeholders are only permitted as prefix or suffix; e.g. *xxx or xxx*.	
	Note when a character appears more than once when using placeholders:	
	<ul> <li>Example character sequence: 01{SU(00,Test1)}</li> <li>Test1 should be replaced with Test 2.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Source entry *1 and target entry 2 finds and replaces the 1 in 01 but not in the subsequent following Test1. Result: 02{SU(00,Test1)}</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Source entry *test1 and target entry test2 finds and replaces Test1.</li> <li>Result: 01{SU(00,Test2)}</li> </ul>	
Target	Entry of the partial string	
	Note: Source and target must be in the same project.	
Apply	Swaps target strings from the source for those defined in the target.	
Note capitalization	When swapping, be sure that any capitalization is an exact match.	
Name	Swaps information in process variable names.	
Identification	Exchanges information in the identification	
Variable/Function	Opens the selection list for variables/functions in relation to the selected line in the list. Clicking on the variable or function in the list defines new target variable or target function. Alternative: Double-click on the corresponding source variable or source function.	

### REPLACE

## **REPLACE WITH MANUAL SELECTION**

To replace elements manually:

- Select the element from the list that you would like to replace as the source.
- Select a target element via the Variable/Function button

The previous element is replaced by the new one.

## AUTOMATED REPLACEMENT WITH RULES

To automatically replace elements on the basis of rules:



- ▶ In the Source input field, define the parameters for the element that you wish to replace
- Define the parameter for the new variable/function in the Target input field
- Specify what is to be replaced via Name/Identification.
- Click on Accept.

# Information

The target variable or target function can also be in a different project as the source variable or source function. In doing so, all projects concerned must be started and available on the same computer in Runtime.

Internal variable IDs are used for replacement. This means that if variables are used or functions are renamed, the replacement remains.

# Attention

When replacing variables, be aware of the type and signal resolution. If you replace a variable with one of an incompatible type, this can lead to errors during execution. You will be warned when making the substitution; the substitution will however be carried out.

# 6.8 Create screen of type Batch Control

#### ENGINEERING

There are two procedures for the creation of a screen from zenon version 8.00:

- The use of the screen creation dialog
- The creation of a screen using the properties

Steps to create the screen using the properties if the screen creation dialog has been deactivated in the menu bar under **Tools**, **Settings** and **Use assistant**:

1. Create a new screen.

To do this, select the **New screen** command in the tool bar or in the context menu of the **Screens** node.

- 2. Change the properties of the screen:
  - a) Name the screen in the Name property.
  - b) Select Batch Control in the Screen type property.



- c) Select the desired frame in the Frame property.
- 3. Configure the content of the screen:
  - a) select menu item Control elements from the menu bar
  - b) Select Insert template in the drop-down list. The dialog to select pre-defined layouts is opened. Certain control elements are inserted into the screen at predefined positions.
  - c) Remove elements that are not required from the screen.
  - d) If necessary, select additional elements in the **Elements** drop-down list. Place these at the desired position in the screen.
- 4. Create a screen switch function.

PFC Editor	Master recipes	Column selection	Format Columns	New
Recipe Editor Typ: STATIC	Master recipes list Typ: STATIC		*	Open
ID: 53507	ID: 53504		Γ	Duplicate
				Rename
				New version
				Highlight as outdated
				Delete
	4		-	Release
	Display control recipes in	list		
	currently executed cont	trol recipes	finished control recipes	
	prepared control recipe	S	outdated control recipe	
	Dynamically update cor	ntrol recipe list	Display associated co	entrol recipes in list
	Control recipe	Column selection	Format Columns	New
	Control recipe list Typ: STATIC		(* 11	Open
	ID: 53513			Duplicate
				Delete
				Rename
	4		-	Starting



# 6.8.1 Control elements

### **INSERT TEMPLATE**

Entry	Description
Insert template	Opens the dialog for selecting a template for the screen type.
	Templates are shipped together with zenon and can also be created by the user.
	Templates add pre-defined control elements to pre-defined position in the screen. Elements that are not necessary can also be removed individually once they have been created. Additional elements are selected from the drop-down list and placed in the zenon screen. Elements can be moved on the screen and arranged individually.

### CONTROL ELEMENTS

Control element	Description
Default (master recipes)	Inserts control elements for master recipes on predefined locations on the screen. These control elements can be supplemented, reduced and positioned newly.
Default (control recipes)	Inserts control elements for control recipes on predefined locations on the screen. These control elements can be supplemented, reduced and positioned newly.
Recipe Editor	Adds the licenses editor for creating master and control recipes.

## MATRIX RECIPE CREATION

Control elements to create matrix recipes.



Control element	Description
Delete column/row	Deletes a line or column. (depending on selection.)
Move columns to the left / steps up	Moves columns to the left or moves steps up (depending on selection.)
Move columns to the right / steps down	Moves columns to the right or moves steps down (depending on selection.)
Activate selected elements	Activates the selected elements. (depending on selection.)
Deactivate selected elements	Deactivates the selected elements. (depending on selection.)

# **RECIPE CONTROL**

Control elements to control recipes.



Control element	Description
General	General control elements:
	Save master recipe
	Check recipe for errors
	Switch recipe to test mode
	Release recipe
	Switch recipe to edit mode
	Close recipe
	Close all other recipes
	Edit element
	Graphical design
Execution commands of the recipe	Control elements for recipe commands:
	Start recipe
	Recipe pausing
	Resume recipe
	Hold recipe
	Restart recipe
	Recipe stopping
	Abort recipe
Execution commands of the phases	Control elements for phase commands:
	Phase pausing
	Resume phase
	Hold phase
	Restart phase
	Escape phase
Switch execution mode	Control elements for execution modes:
	Switch to automatic mode
	Switch to semi-automatic mode
	Switch to manual mode
	Compatible elements
Execution navigation	Control elements for navigation in recipes:
	<ul> <li>Continue recipe only at selected execution position</li> </ul>
	Continue recipe at all execution positions



	Skip active condition
Operation navigation	<ul> <li>Control elements for navigation in operations:</li> <li>Change to operation template</li> <li>Switch to main recipe</li> </ul>

#### Compatible elements:

Standard Win32 control elements that have been replaced or removed by zenon elements (dynamic text, switch) and continue to be available due to compatibility reasons. These elements are not taken into account with automatic insertion of templates.

For the description, see current elements.

- Switch to automatic mode
- Switch to semi-automatic mode
- Switch to manual mode



### MASTER RECIPES

Control elements for master recipes.

Control element	Description
Master recipes list	In this list all master recipes can be displayed. The display can be limited by filters to an individual selection.
	The filtering can be preset in the zenon Editor in the screen switch function (on page 63). Filtering in Runtime is also possible. These filter settings are not saved in Runtime. This means that the filters must be entered again when called up again. A permanent pre-setting of the filter is only possible with configuration in the zenon Editor.
	All commands are also possible in the context menu of the list. The commands for list management can be called from the header of the list. The commands for recipe management can be called at editing one or more recipes.
	The recipes in the list cannot be edited directly in the list. Renaming, changing the description or changing the recipe status is only possible with the corresponding commands.
Column selection master recipe	Opens a dialog in order to determine which columns should be displayed (on page 94). Attention: These changes are discarded when the screen is called up again. A permanent definition is only possible in the zenon Editor.
Format columns master recipe	Opens a dialog to edit the column settings (on page 98). Attention: These changes are discarded when the screen is called up again. A permanent definition is only possible in the zenon Editor.
New master recipe	Opens dialog for creating a new master recipe (on page 138).
Create new version of master recipe	Creates a new version (on page 187) of the selected master recipe. This must be approved or marked as obsolete.
Rename master recipe	Only active if exactly one master recipe was selected. The dialog for the input of a unique name and the description is opened. Recipes can only be renamed if they are in status Editable. Also use this function in order to change the description



	of the control recipe.
	When renaming a recipe, a CEL entry is created.
Duplicate master recipe	Only active if exactly one recipe is selected. Created a copy of the selected recipe. At the creation of the copy, the version of the recipe saved on the hard disk is used. If the recipe is just edited in another computer and the changes have not yet been saved, the changes are not applied. The dialog for the input of a unique name and the description is opened.
	The copy of the recipe automatically receives status Editable and can be edited further.
	When duplicating a recipe, a CEL entry is created.
Delete master recipe	Deletes the selected recipes irrevocably. If the recipe is opened on another computer for editing, it is automatically closed there.
	Deleting is only possible if there are no control recipes which are based on the master recipe. First you must delete all control recipes. Recipes which are currently executed in test mode (master recipe status: Test in execution) cannot be deleted. First they must be finished, stopped or canceled.
	If recipes must not be deleted - e.g. in an FDA-regulated environment - it is recommended that this button is not configured or that it is given an appropriate <b>Authorization level</b> . A CEL entry is created when a recipe is deleted.
Open master recipe	Opens the selected master recipe in the recipe editor if screen element Recipe editor exists in the screen. Each selected master recipe is opened in a separate tab of the recipe editor.
Switch master recipe to edit mode	Changes the master recipe status of the selected recipes to Editable. In this status, recipes can again be edited completely. Only recipes in Test mode can be set back to Editable.
Switch master recipe to test mode	Changes the master recipe status of the selected recipes to Test mode. Only faultless recipes can be switched to test mode. If error occur during the validation (on page 208), you must first fix them.
	Recipes in the test mode can be executed but no longer reengineered. For details about the states see chapter Recipe types and recipe states (on page 136).
Release master recipe	Changes the master recipe status of the selected recipes to Released. Only recipes without errors can be



	<ul> <li>released. If error occur during the validation (on page 208), you must first fix them.</li> <li>Only recipes in status Test mode and Editable can be released.</li> <li>Released recipes can no longer be edited. Control recipes can only be created from released recipes.</li> <li>For details about the states see chapter Recipe types and recipe states (on page 136).</li> </ul>
	When releasing a recipe, a CEL entry is created.
Highlight master recipe as outdated	Changes the status of the recipe to outdated. The recipe can no longer be edited or approved. No control recipe can be created on the basis of this recipe.
Display associated control recipes in list	Displays all control recipes that are based on the selected master recipe and that comply with the set filter criteria.
Dynamically update control recipe list.	Deactivates the <b>Display associated control recipes</b> <b>in list</b> button. When selecting a master recipe, all attendant control recipes are displayed automatically.
Filter for displaying the control recipe	Makes it possible to filter control recipes for the following criteria:
	<ul> <li>Prepared control recipes: Display only control recipes which are prepared for execution.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Currently executed control recipes: Displays control recipes which are currently executed.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Completed control recipes: Displays control recipes which have already been executed.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Outdated control recipes: Shows control recipes with the status outdated.</li> </ul>
	Filtering only takes effect once you click on <b>Show</b> associated control recipes in list.
Compatible elements	Standard Win32 control elements that have been replaced or removed by zenon elements (dynamic text, switch) and continue to be available due to compatibility reasons. These elements are not taken into account with automatic insertion of templates.
	For the description, see current elements.



Finished control recipes
--------------------------

## CONTROL RECIPE

Control elements for control recipes.

Control element	Description
List control recipes	In this list all control recipes can be displayed. The display can be limited by filters to an individual selection.
	Per default the list is empty. The following must be the case for the list to be filled:
	Master recipes must be selected
	<ul> <li>The filters: currently-executed control recipes, prepared control recipes and completed control recipes must be set</li> </ul>
	click button display associated control recipes in list
	In addition to the filters mentioned above, you can filter the list itself. The filtering can be preset in the zenon Editor in the screen switch function (on page 63). Filtering in Runtime is also possible. These filter settings are not saved in Runtime. This means that the filters must be entered again when called up again. A permanent pre-setting of the filter is only possible with configuration in the zenon Editor.
	All commands are also possible in the context menu of the list. The commands for list management can be called from the header of the list. The commands for recipe management can be called at editing one or more recipes. The recipes in the list cannot be edited directly in the list. Renaming, changing the description or starting the recipes is only possible with the corresponding commands.



Column selection control recipe	Opens a dialog in order to determine which columns
	should be displayed (on page 94). Attention: These changes are discarded when the screen is called up again. A permanent definition is only possible in the zenon Editor.
Format columns control recipe	Opens a dialog to edit the column settings (on page 98). Attention: These changes are discarded when the screen is called up again. A permanent definition is only possible in the zenon Editor.
New control recipe	Opens the dialog (on page 203) for entering a unique name and a description for the control recipe. The uniqueness of the name is also checked in the zenon network. The name must only be unique within the master recipes. Control recipes which are based on other master recipes may have the same name. The uniqueness within module Batch Control is achieved by always referencing the master recipe name and the control recipe name.
	When creating a control recipe, a CEL entry is created.
Rename control recipe	<ul> <li>Only active if exactly one control recipe was selected.</li> <li>The dialog for the input of a unique name and the description is opened.</li> <li>Recipes can only be renamed if they are in status Prepared.</li> <li>Also use this function in order to change the description of the control recipe.</li> </ul>
Duplicate control recipe	Only active if exactly one recipe is selected. Created a copy of the selected recipe. At the creation of the copy, the version of the recipe saved on the hard disk is used. If the recipe is just edited in another computer and the changes have not yet been saved, the changes are not applied. The dialog for the input of a unique name and the description is opened.
	The copy of the recipe automatically gets the status Prepared and can therefore be edited and started. The execution status (on page 221) of the duplicate is set to automatic.
	When duplicating a recipe, a CEL entry is created.
Delete control recipe	Deletes the selected recipes irrevocably. If the recipe is opened on another computer for editing, it is automatically closed there.
	Deleting is only possible if all selected recipes are not executed (control recipe status: In execution). First they must be finished, stopped or canceled.
	If recipes must not be deleted - e.g. in an FDA-regulated



	environment - it is recommended that this button is not configured or that it is given an appropriate <b>Authorization level</b> . A CEL entry is created when a recipe is deleted.
Open control recipe	Opens the selected control recipes in the recipe editor if screen element Recipe editor exists in the screen. Each selected control recipe is opened in a separate tab of the recipe editor.
Start control recipe	Starts the selected control recipe in the set execution mode. The recipes are executed automatically at the Server. It is not necessary that the recipe is opened in the recipe editor.

## PARAMETER LISTS

List fields for the display of parameters.

Two list boxes can be created. These are configured in the screen switching (on page 89).

Control element	Description
Tag List 1	First parameter list.
Tag List 2	Second parameter list

## **CONTROL STRATEGIES**

Control element for control strategies.

Control element	Description
List of control strategies	Shows the control strategies available for the selected phase.
Apply control strategy	Applies the control strategy selected in the list to the phase.

## XML IMPORT/EXPORT

Control element for XML import/export.

Control element	Description	
Export master recipes	Exports the selected master recipe as an XML file.	
Export control recipes	Exports the selected control recipe as an XML file.	
XML Import	Imports the selected XML file.	



# 6.9 Job variables

Job variables can be linked in the Editor. Job variables make it possible to assign job IDs to Batch productions. In order to ensure that the variable value is available immediately, the job variable is inserted into the global connection and registered when Runtime is started. The variable is requested again on reloading.

Job variables defined in the **Individual job variable** property can be allocated using a function (on page 102). Otherwise the global **Job variable** is used.

**Note:** Job number is not translated for recipe list and CEL. This is also applicable if you include the @ character.

## **GLOBAL JOB VARIABLES**

To link a global Job variable:

- 1. Navigate to the General/Job variable node in the module
- 2. Link a variable in the Job variable property
- 3. Select, from the drop-down list of the **Apply value from job variable** property, the type of transfer to Runtime:
  - When creating the control recipe:

When creating the control recipe, the current value of the variables is transferred into the control recipe. The value is displayed in the control recipe configuration dialog. The value must not be empty, otherwise the recipe cannot be created.

• When starting the control recipe:

In Runtime, the content of the variables is written to the recipe when the control recipe is started. The value must not be empty.

**Note about value changes:** The value transferred by the variables is always changed into a string, regardless of the type of variables. When changing from real to string, 10 decimal points are taken into account. Zeros at the end are cut off.

4. You can also define a Individual job variable if you wish

In Runtime, the allocated job ID can be displayed in the list of control recipes.

## INDIVIDUAL JOB VARIABLE

To link a Individual job variable:

- 1. Navigate to the General/Job variable node in the module
- 2. Link one or more variables in the Individual job variable property



3. When configuring zenon functions (on page 102), select the desired variable and the type of allocation

# 6.10 Screen switch Batch Control

To use Batch Control in the Runtime, engineer a screen switch function to a screen of type <code>Batch Control:</code>

- 1. Select the **New function** command in the **Functions** node
- 2. select the Screen switching function
- 3. select the screen of type Batch Control
- 4. the filter dialog (on page 64) is displayed
- 5. configure the
  - a) Settings (on page 64) for the list of the master recipes/control recipes including prefiltering (on page 68)
  - b) Variable allocations (on page 71)
  - c) Tag list settings (on page 89)
  - d) Control strategies list settings (on page 93)



No prefitering   I concurrence of the control recipes when the screen is activated  No fil  Prefiter  Prefiter  Prefiter  Prefiter  Variable  Prefiter Variable Prefiter Variable Prefiter Variable Prefiter Variable Prefiter Variable Prefiter Variable Prefiter Variable Prefiter Variable Prefiter Variable Prefiter	variable assignment	Tag list actions Control strategies list actions		
refiter Variable   No prefitering <no linked="" variable="">   Open found recipes in the recipe editor (a maximum of 20 recipes are opened)   Solumn settings   Iske over from calling screen   Master recipe name   Master recipe ataus   Reipe type   Execution   Column format   Column format   Column selection   Column format   Prefiter Variable   No prefitering   Inster recipe automation of 20 recipes are opened)   Selection of master recipes from calling screen and apply   Use all active master recipes   Prefiter   Variable   No prefitering   Inster recipe automations   Selection of master recipes automatically fills list of control recipes   Selection of master recipe editor (a maximum of 20 recipes are opened)   Selection of master recipes automatically fills list of control recipes   Selection of master recipes automatically fills list of control recipes   Selection of master recipe automatically fills list of control recipes   Selection of master recipe description   Version fund recipes in the recipe description   Version fund recipes automatically fills list of control recipes   Selection of master recipe automatically fills list of control recipes   Selection of master recipe description   Version initial ve   Master recipe atalus   Recipe type   Evecution   Master recipe atalus   Recipe type   S</no>		Tag list settings Control strategies list settings		0
No number     Image: Column recipes in the recipe edtor (a maximum of 20 recipes are opened)     Column settings     Take over fron calling screen     Master recipe name     Master recipe name     Master recipe description     Version Initial ve     Master recipe status     Repet type     Execution to     Ret text     Piter text     Column format     Column selection     Column format     Outri Recipes List     Take over selection of master recipes from calling screen and apply     Use all active master recipes     Prefittering        No prefittering              Prefittering <td>ist of master recipes</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>	ist of master recipes			
Open found recipes in the recipe editor (a maximum of 20 recipes are opened)   Solum settings Inter recipe name Master recipe description Version initial ve Master recipe status Repet type Execution of Recrease and apply Or all on the recipes in the recipe status of	Prefilter	Variable		Car
Open found recipes in the recipe editor (a maximum of 20 recepts are opened)         Solumn settings         take over from calling screen         Master recipe name       Master recipe description         Version       Initial ve         Retreted       Retreted         Piter text       Piter text         Column settings         Column setection       Column format         Ontrol Recipes List         adding the list of the control recipes when the screen is activated         No filter         Take over filter from calling screen         No filter         Take over filter from calling screen         Open found recipes in the recipe editor (a maximum of 20 recepts are opened)         Selection of master recipes         Selection of master recipes automatically fills list of control recipes         Column settings         Inter recipe name         Master recipe automatically fills list of control recipes         Selection of master recipes datomatically fills list of control recipes         Selection of master recipes automatically fills list of control recipes         Selection of master recipe automatically fills list of control recipes         Selection of master recipe description         Version       Master recipe name         Master recipe name	No prefiltering $\sim$	<no linked="" variable=""></no>		He
Take over from calling screen         Master recipe name       Master recipe description         Fitter text       Fitter text         Fitter text       Fitter text         Column selection       Column format         Column selection of master recipes when the screen is activated       Filter control recipe for status         No fil       Take over filter from calling screen         Take over selection of master recipes       Filter control recipe for status         Prefiter       Variable         No prefitering       In ovariable linked>         Open found recipes automatically fills list of control recipes         Selection of master recipes automatically fills list of control recipes         Column settrigs         Take over filter recipe name         Master recipe name         Master recipe name         Master recipe in mature         Version initial ve         Master recipe name         Master recipe name         Master recipe name         Master recipe atomatically fills list of control recipes         Column settrigs         Take over filter text       Filter text         Filter text       Filter text         Filter text       Filter text         Version initial ve       Master recip	Open found recipes in the recipe	editor (a maximum of 20 recpes are opened)		
Take over from calling screen         Master recipe name       Master recipe description         Fitter text       Fitter text         Fitter text       Fitter text         Column selection       Column format         Column selection of master recipes when the screen is activated       Filter control recipe for status         No fil       Take over filter from calling screen         Take over selection of master recipes       Filter control recipe for status         Prefiter       Variable         No prefitering       In ovariable linked>         Open found recipes automatically fills list of control recipes         Selection of master recipes automatically fills list of control recipes         Column settrigs         Take over filter recipe name         Master recipe name         Master recipe name         Master recipe in mature         Version initial ve         Master recipe name         Master recipe name         Master recipe name         Master recipe atomatically fills list of control recipes         Column settrigs         Take over filter text       Filter text         Filter text       Filter text         Filter text       Filter text         Version initial ve       Master recip	Column astrings			
Master recipe name       Master recipe description       Version Initial ve       Master recipe status       Reipe type       Execution status         Filter text       Filter t	-			
Filter text     Column selection   Column format     Column selection     Column selection of master recipes from calling screen and apply     Prefilter     Variable     No prefiltering     Column settings     Column settings     Column settings     Take over filter recipe status     Prefilter     Variable     No prefiltering     Column settings     Column settings     Column settings     Column settings     Ther text     Prefilter text     Prefilter text     Prefilter text     Prefilter text     Variable linked>     Open found recipes automatically fills list of control recipes     Column settings     Column settings     Column filter text     Pilter text    <	_	Master moine deposition	Version Initial vol. Master region status. Poins tune	
Column selection       Column format         Column selection       Column format         Column selection       Column format         Column selection       Column format         Selection of master recipes when the screen is activated       Filter control recipe for status         No fill       □ Take over filter from calling screen         Due all active master recipes       □ Oreperate         Prefilter       Variable         No prefiltering       □ on variable linked>         Open found recipes in the recipe editor (a maximum of 20 recepts are opened)       □ Open found recipes in the recipe editor (a maximum of 20 recepts are opened)         Selection of master recipes automatically fills list of control recipes       □ Outdated         Column settings       □ take over from calling screen         Itake over from calling screen       □         Master recipe name       Master recipe description         Filter text       □ Filtert         Filter text       □ Filtert         Filter text       □ Filtert				
ontrol Recipes List Padding the list of the control recipes when the screen is activated No fill Take over selection of master recipes from calling screen and apply Use all active master recipes Prefilter Variable No prefiltering Con variable linked> Courrently executed Courrently executed Courrently executed Courrently executed Courrently fills list of control recipes are opened) Selection of master recipes automatically fills list of control recipes Column settings Take over from calling screen Master recipe name Master recipe description Filter text Filter text Filter t. Filter t. Filter text Fi		ritertext		
ontrol Recipes List Padding the list of the control recipes when the screen is activated No fill Take over selection of master recipes from calling screen and apply Use all active master recipes Prefilter Variable No prefiltering Con variable linked> Courrently executed Courrently executed Courrently executed Courrently executed Courrently fills list of control recipes are opened) Selection of master recipes automatically fills list of control recipes Column settings Take over from calling screen Master recipe name Master recipe description Filter text Filter text Filter t. Filter t. Filter text Fi	O lange of all and	O have format		
adding the list of the control recipes when the screen is activated       Filter control recipe for status         No fill       Take over filter recipes from calling screen and apply       Image: Control recipe for status         Use all active master recipes       Prefiter       Variable         No prefittering       Image: Control recipe for status       Image: Control recipe for status         Open found recipes in the recipe editor (a maximum of 20 recpes are opened)       Image: Control recipe status       Image: Control recipe status         Selection of master recipes automatically fills list of control recipes       Image: Control recipe status       Image: Control recipe status         Adder recipe name       Master recipe description       Version Initial ve       Master recipe status       Recipe type       Execution filter text         Filter text       Filter t       Filter text       Filter t       Filter text       Filter text	Column selection	Column format		
adding the list of the control recipes when the screen is activated       Filter control recipe for status         No fill       Take over filter recipes from calling screen and apply       Image: Control recipe for status         Use all active master recipes       Prefiter       Variable         No prefittering       Image: Control recipe for status       Image: Control recipe for status         Open found recipes in the recipe editor (a maximum of 20 recpes are opened)       Image: Control recipe status       Image: Control recipe status         Selection of master recipes automatically fills list of control recipes       Image: Control recipe status       Image: Control recipe status         Adder recipe name       Master recipe description       Version Initial ve       Master recipe status       Recipe type       Execution filter text         Filter text       Filter t       Filter text       Filter t       Filter text       Filter text				
No fill       ○ Take over filter from calling screen         O take over selection of master recipes from calling screen and apply       ● Use this filter         Use all active master recipes       ○ Prepared         Prefiter       Variable         No prefittering       ○ no variable linked>         Open found recipes in the recipe editor (a maximum of 20 recipes are opened)       ○ Currently executed         Selection of master recipes automatically fills list of control recipes       ○ Outdated         Column settings       ••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••				
Take over selection of master recipes from calling screen and apply       ● Use this filter         Use all active master recipes       Prepared         Prefilter       Variable       ✓ Currently executed         No prefiltering       Interview of maximum of 20 recepts are opened)       ✓ Currently executed         Open found recipes in the recipe editor (a maximum of 20 recepts are opened)       ✓ Outdated       ✓ Outdated         Selection of master recipes automatically fills list of control recepts       ✓ Currently executed       ✓ Outdated         Column settings       Take over from calling screen       ✓ Recipe type       Execution efficient initial ve Master recipe status       Recipe type       Execution efficient initial ve Filter text       ✓ Filter text       ✓ Filter text       ✓ Filter t ♥ Filter t ♥ Filter text		when the screen is activated		
Use all active master recipes				
Prefilter Variable Variable Inked> Currently executed Executed Open found recipes in the recipe editor (a maximum of 20 recpes are opened) Selection of master recipes automatically fills list of control recipes  Solumn settings take over from calling screen Master recipe name Master recipe description Version Initial ve Master recipe status Recipe type Execution of Filter text Theretext Filter text Filter te				
Prenter       Voltate         No prefiltering       Image: Convertible linked>         Open found recipes in the recipe editor (a maximum of 20 recipes are opened)       Image: Convertible linked>         Selection of master recipe automatically fills list of control recipes       Image: Convertible linked>         Column settings       Image: Convertible linked>       Image: Convertible linked>         Itake over from calling screen       Image: Convertible linked>       Image: Convertible linked>         Master recipe name       Master recipe description       Version       Initial ve       Master recipe status       Recipe type       Execution of Filter text         Filter text	Take over selection of master recipient of the selection of the selecti	ipes from calling screen and apply	Use this filter	
No prefiltering			(● Use this filter ✓ Prepared	
Open found recipes in the recipe editor (a maximum of 20 recipes are opened)         Selection of master recipes automatically fills list of control recipes         Column settings         take over from calling screen         Master recipe name       Master recipe description         Filter text       ▼ Filter text         Filter text       ▼ Filter text         Version       Nater recipe status         Recipe type       Execution state	<ul> <li>Take over selection of master recipes</li> <li>Use all active master recipes</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Use this filter</li> <li>Prepared</li> <li>Currently executed</li> </ul>	
Column settings take over from calling screen Master recipe name Master recipe description Version Initial ve Master recipe status Recipe type Execution a Filter text V Filter text	Take over selection of master reci     Use all active master recipes     Prefilter	Variable	Use this filter     Prepared     Currently executed     Executed	
take over from calling screen       Master recipe name     Master recipe description       Filter text     T       Filter text     Filter text   Filter text Filtert	Take over selection of master reci     Use all active master recipes     Prefilter     No prefiltering	Variable	Use this filter     Prepared     Currently executed     Executed	
take over from calling screen       Master recipe name     Master recipe description       Filter text     T       Filter text     Filter text   Filter text Filtert	Take over selection of master reci Use all active master recipes Prefilter No prefiltering Open found recipes in the recipe of	Variable < <no linked="" variable=""> editor (a maximum of 20 recpes are opened)</no>	Use this filter     Prepared     Currently executed     Executed	
Master recipe name     Master recipe description     Version     Initial ve     Master recipe status     Recipe type     Execution status       Filter text     T     Filter text     Filter text     Filter text     Filter text     Filter text     Filter text	Take over selection of master recipes Use all active master recipes Prefilter No prefiltering Open found recipes in the recipe of Selection of master recipes autom	Variable < <no linked="" variable=""> editor (a maximum of 20 recpes are opened)</no>	Use this filter     Prepared     Currently executed     Executed	
Filter text ♥ Filter text ▶	Take over selection of master recipes Use all active master recipes Prefilter No prefiltering Open found recipes in the recipe of Selection of master recipes autom Column settings	Variable < <no linked="" variable=""> editor (a maximum of 20 recpes are opened)</no>	Use this filter     Prepared     Currently executed     Executed	
< >>	Take over selection of master recipes     Use all active master recipes     Prefilter     No prefiltering     Open found recipes in the recipe a     Selection of master recipes autom Column settings     take over from calling screen	Variable <pre></pre> < ono variable linked> editor (a maximum of 20 recpes are opened) atically fills list of control recipes	Use this filter     Prepared     Currently executed     Executed     Outdated	
	Take over selection of master recipes Use all active master recipes Prefilter No prefiltering Open found recipes in the recipe a Selection of master recipes autom Column settings take over from calling screen Master recipe name	Variable Interpretation of the second sec	Use this filter     Prepared     Currently executed     Executed     Outdated      Version Initial ve Master recipe status Recipe type Execution s	
Column selection Column format	Take over selection of master recipes Use all active master recipes Prefilter No prefiltering Open found recipes in the recipe of Selection of master recipes autom Column settings take over from calling screen Master recipe name Filter text S	Variable Interpretation of the second sec	Use this filter     Prepared     Currently executed     Executed     Outdated      Version Initial ve Master recipe status Recipe type Execution s     Piltert	
	Take over selection of master recipes Use all active master recipes Prefilter Open found recipes in the recipe a Selection of master recipes autom Column settings take over from calling screen Master recipe name Filter text Selection	Variable Intervention of 20 recipes are opened) (and control recipes) Master recipe description Filter text	Use this filter     Prepared     Currently executed     Executed     Outdated      Version Initial ve Master recipe status Recipe type Execution s     Piltert	
	Take over selection of master recipes Use all active master recipes Prefilter Open found recipes in the recipe a Selection of master recipes autom Column settings take over from calling screen Master recipe name Filter text Selection	Variable Intervention of 20 recipes are opened) (and control recipes) Master recipe description Filter text	Use this filter     Prepared     Currently executed     Executed     Outdated      Version Initial ve Master recipe status Recipe type Execution s     Piltert	
Recipe names are case sensitive	Take over selection of master recipes Use all active master recipes Prefilter Open found recipes in the recipe of Selection of master recipes autom Column settings take over from calling screen Master recipe name Filter text Column selection Column selection	Variable Intervention of 20 recipes are opened) (and control recipes) Master recipe description Filter text	Use this filter     Prepared     Currently executed     Executed     Outdated      Version Initial ve Master recipe status Recipe type Execution s     Piltert	

## 6. link the function with a button on the screen in order to switch in the Runtime

# 6.10.1 Recipe list settings

The settings are configured for:

- ► List of master recipes
- Control Recipes List



# Prefilter (on page 68)

r			
ipe list settings Variable assignment	Tag list settings Control strategies list setting	a	
List of master recipes			OK
Prefilter	Variable		Cancel
No prefiltering ~	<pre><no linked="" variable=""></no></pre>		Curreer
	editor (a maximum of 20 recpes are opened)		Help
_ Open found recipes in the recipe	editor (a maximum of 20 recpes are opened)		
Column settings			
take over from calling screen			
Master recipe name	Master recipe description	Version Initial ve Master recipe status Reipe type Execution s	
	Filter text	Filtert 🖓 Filtert 🦞 Filtertext 🖓 Filtertext 🖓 Filtertex	
<		>	
Column selection	Column format		
Control Recipes List			
Padding the list of the control recipe	s when the screen is activated	Filter control recipe for status	
No fill		O Take over filter from calling screen	
O Take over selection of master rec	ipes from calling screen and apply	Use this filter	
OUse all active master recipes		Prepared	
Prefilter	Variable		
No prefiltering	< <no linked="" variable=""></no>	Executed      Outdated	
Open found recipes in the recipe	editor (a maximum of 20 recpes are opened)	Outuated	
Selection of master recipes auton	natically fills list of control recipes		
Column settings			
take over from calling screen			
Master recipe name	Master recipe description	Version Initial ve Master recipe status Recipe type Execution s	
Filter text	Filter text	♥ Filter t ♥ Filter text ♥ Filter text ♥ Filter text	
<		>	
Column selection	Column format		
Recipe names are case sensitive			
Show this dialog in the Runtime			

## LIST OF MASTER RECIPES

Configuration for master recipes.



Option	Description	
Prefilter	Select from a drop-down list whether master recipes should be pre-filtered when called up. Possible settings:	
	<ul> <li>No prefiltering: Recipes are not pre-filtered. All master recipes are shown in the list.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>ID from variable: Recipes are filtered according to ID. Filter condition is defined in the Variable property.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Name from variable: Recipes are filtered according to recipe name. Filter condition is defined in the Variable property.</li> </ul>	
Variable	Definition of the variables that provide the values for the prefiltering. Click on button in order to open the dialog for selecting the variable.	
Apply column settings from calling screen	Active: The column settings are transferred from the calling screen in Runtime, i.e. the screen in which the button is configured with the screen switching function. The calling screen must also be a Batch Control screen. The corresponding properties can no longer be configured in the Editor.	
List field	Display of the configured columns.	
Column selection	Opens the dialog for selecting the columns (on page 94).	
Column format	Opens a dialog (on page 169) to format the columns.	

## CONTROL RECIPES LIST

Configuration for control recipes.



Option	Description	
Filling of the list of the control recipes when the screen is activated	<ul> <li>Settings for the filling of the list when called up. Select an option.</li> <li>No filling</li> <li>Apply and use selection of the master recipes from calling screen</li> <li>Use all active master recipes</li> </ul>	
Prefilter	<ul> <li>Select from a drop-down list whether control recipes should be prefiltered when called up. Possible settings:</li> <li>No prefiltering: Recipes are not pre-filtered.</li> <li>ID from variable: Recipes are filtered according to ID. Filter condition is defined in the Variable property.</li> <li>Name from variable: Recipes are filtered according to recipe name. Filter condition is defined in the Variable property.</li> </ul>	
Variable	<ul> <li>Job ID from variable: Recipes are filtered according to job ID. Filter condition is defined in the Variable property.</li> <li>Definition of the variables that provide the values for the prefiltering. Click on button in order to open the dialog for selecting the variable.</li> </ul>	
Open found recipes in recipe editor	Active: The recipes shown in the list when called up are opened in the recipe editor. Note: The first 20 recipes found is the maximum that can be opened.	
Selection of master recipes automatically fills list of control recipes	Active: The list of control recipes always shows the control recipes of the master recipes at the respective point in time. In Runtime, it is then only necessary to click on the <b>Dynamically update control recipe list</b> button.	
Apply column settings from calling screen	Active: The column settings are accepted by the screen that is calling them up in Runtime. The corresponding properties can no longer be configured in the Editor.	
List field	Display of the configured columns.	
Column selection	Opens the dialog for selecting the columns	
Column format	Opens a dialog (on page 169) to format the columns.	
Filter control recipe for status	Settings for the filtering of the control recipes according to their status.	
Apply filter from calling screen	Active: The filter is accepted from the calling screen.	
Use this filter	<pre>Selection of criteria for the status of a recipe that is to be called up. Active: Several statuses can be selected by selecting the corresponding checkbox:     Prepared     Currently executed</pre>	



<pre>Executed</pre>
▶ Outdated

#### **GENERAL OPTIONS**

Recipe names are case sensitive	Active: General options	
	Default: Inactive	
Show this dialog in the Runtime	Active: When calling up the function in Runtime, this dialog is opened and the user can adjust the configuration before execution.	
	The dialog is displayed on the current computer in Runtime. During network operation when activating the client the dialog is also displayed on the client	

## CLOSE DIALOG

Option	Description	
ок	Applies all changes in all tabs and closes the dialog.	
Cancel	Discards all changes in all tabs and closes the dialog.	
Help	Opens online help.	

Note for variable selection using name or ID: For the selection of variables according to name or ID, numerical variables and string variables can be selected respectively. The data types are converted to the respective correct form.

## Prefilter

To eliminate the need for all recipes to always be loaded in the recipe list in Runtime, you can define filters for master recipes and control recipes in the screen switch function. Then, the only recipes that appear in the list of master recipes and the control recipes are those that correspond to the configured filter conditions. If activated, these recipes are also opened in the recipe editor.



**Note:** Screen switching in Runtime can take some time due to large amounts of data for the recipes to be loaded. The progress is shown in a progress bar.

variable assignment	Tag list settings Control strategies list settings		
	<u> </u>		OK
st of master recipes			
	/ariable		Cano
No prefiltering $\vee$	<no linked="" variable=""></no>		Help
Open found recipes in the recipe edi	itor (a maximum of 20 recpes are opened)		
Column settings			
take over from calling screen			
Master recipe name	Master recipe description	Version Initial ve Master recipe status Reipe type Execution s	
Filter text	Filter text	Piltert     Piltert     Piltertext     Piltertext     Piltertext	
<	THEFT BOAL		
Column selection	Column format		
Column selection	Column format		
ontrol Recipes List			
adding the list of the control regines w	hen the screen is activated		
adding the list of the control recipes w	hen the screen is activated	Filter control recipe for status	
No fill		Filter control reape for status ○ Take over filter from calling screen ④ Use this filter	
		O Take over filter from calling screen	
<ul> <li>No fill</li> <li>Take over selection of master recipe</li> <li>Use all active master recipes</li> </ul>		Take over filter from calling screen	
No fill Take over selection of master recipe Use all active master recipes Prefilter	s from calling screen and apply Variable	<ul> <li>○ Take over filter from calling screen</li> <li>● Use this filter</li> <li>☑ Prepared</li> <li>☑ Currently executed</li> <li>☑ Executed</li> </ul>	
No fill Take over selection of master recipe Use all active master recipes Prefilter No prefiltering	es from calling screen and apply Variable <no linked="" variable=""></no>	<ul> <li>○ Take over filter from calling screen</li> <li>● Use this filter</li> <li>☑ Prepared</li> <li>☑ Currently executed</li> </ul>	
No fill Take over selection of master recipe Use all active master recipes Prefilter No prefiltering Open found recipes in the recipe edi	s from calling screen and apply Variable <no linked="" variable=""> tor (a maximum of 20 recpes are opened)</no>	<ul> <li>○ Take over filter from calling screen</li> <li>● Use this filter</li> <li>☑ Prepared</li> <li>☑ Currently executed</li> <li>☑ Executed</li> </ul>	
No fill Take over selection of master recipe Use all active master recipes Prefilter No prefiltering	s from calling screen and apply Variable <no linked="" variable=""> tor (a maximum of 20 recpes are opened)</no>	<ul> <li>○ Take over filter from calling screen</li> <li>● Use this filter</li> <li>☑ Prepared</li> <li>☑ Currently executed</li> <li>☑ Executed</li> </ul>	
No fill Take over selection of master recipe Use all active master recipes Prefilter No prefiltering Open found recipes in the recipe edi	s from calling screen and apply Variable <no linked="" variable=""> tor (a maximum of 20 recpes are opened)</no>	<ul> <li>○ Take over filter from calling screen</li> <li>● Use this filter</li> <li>☑ Prepared</li> <li>☑ Currently executed</li> <li>☑ Executed</li> </ul>	
No fill Take over selection of master recipe Use all active master recipes Prefilter No prefiltering Open found recipes in the recipe edi Selection of master recipes automate	s from calling screen and apply Variable <no linked="" variable=""> tor (a maximum of 20 recpes are opened)</no>	<ul> <li>○ Take over filter from calling screen</li> <li>● Use this filter</li> <li>☑ Prepared</li> <li>☑ Currently executed</li> <li>☑ Executed</li> </ul>	
No fill Take over selection of master recipe Use all active master recipes Prefilter No prefiltering Open found recipes in the recipe edi Selection of master recipes automat Column settings	s from calling screen and apply Variable <no linked="" variable=""> tor (a maximum of 20 recpes are opened)</no>	O Take over filter from calling screen         ● Use this filter         ● Prepared         ○ Currently executed         ● Executed         ○ Outdated	
No fill Take over selection of master recipe Use all active master recipes Prefilter No prefiltering Open found recipes in the recipe edi Selection of master recipes automat column settings take over from calling screen Master recipe name Filter text	ts from calling screen and apply Variable <no linked="" variable=""> tor (a maximum of 20 recpes are opened) ically fills list of control recipes</no>	O Take over fiber from calling screen         ● Use this filter         ☑ Prepared         ☑ Currently executed         ☑ Executed         ☑ Outdated	
No fill Take over selection of master recipe Use all active master recipes Prefilter No prefiltering Open found recipes in the recipe edi Selection of master recipes automat Solumn settings take over from calling screen Master recipe name	s from calling screen and apply Variable <a href="mailto:screen"><a href="mailto:screen">screen</a> Variable <a href="mailto:screen"><a href="mailto:screen"><a href="mailto:screen"><a href="mailto:screen">screen</a> (an aximum of 20 recpes are opened) (cally fills list of control recipes Master recipe description</a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a>	O Take over filter from calling screen         ● Use this filter         ● Prepared         ○ Currently executed         ● Executed         ○ Outdated	
No fill Take over selection of master recipe Use all active master recipes Prefilter No prefiltering Open found recipes in the recipe edi Selection of master recipes automat Solumn settings take over from calling screen Master recipe name Filter text	s from calling screen and apply Variable <a href="mailto:screen"><a href="mailto:screen">screen</a> Variable <a href="mailto:screen"><a href="mailto:screen"><a href="mailto:screen"><a href="mailto:screen">screen</a> (an aximum of 20 recpes are opened) (cally fills list of control recipes Master recipe description</a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a>	O Take over fiber from calling screen         ● Use this filter         ☑ Prepared         ☑ Currently executed         ☑ Executed         ☑ Outdated	
No fill Take over selection of master recipe Use all active master recipes Prefilter No prefiltering Open found recipes in the recipe edi Selection of master recipes automat Solumn settings take over from calling screen Master recipe name Filter text	es from calling screen and apply Variable <a href="mailto:screen"><a href="mailto:screen">screen</a> Master recipe description Filter text</a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a>	O Take over fiber from calling screen         ● Use this filter         ☑ Prepared         ☑ Currently executed         ☑ Executed         ☑ Outdated	
No fill Take over selection of master recipe Use all active master recipes Prefilter No prefiltering Open found recipes in the recipe edi Selection of master recipes automat Solumn settings take over from calling screen Master recipe name Filter text	es from calling screen and apply Variable <a href="mailto:screen"><a href="mailto:screen">screen</a> Master recipe description Filter text</a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a>	O Take over fiber from calling screen         ● Use this filter         ☑ Prepared         ☑ Currently executed         ☑ Executed         ☑ Outdated	

If you want it to be impossible for users to remove the filters in the runtime environment:

- 1. Deactivate the Show this dialog in Runtime option.
- 2. Block the column filter: Open the **Column format...** (on page 98) dialog and activate the **Lock column filter in the Runtime** option. As a result of this, the user cannot modify the filter in Runtime and therefore they do not get the recipes that they cannot modify displayed.

### FILTERING FOR MASTER RECIPES

Configure:

1. <u>Prefilter</u>

Stipulate if recipes are to be prefiltered. You can filter according to name or ID. The filter condition is queried in Runtime using a variable.

2. Column settings



- a) in the screen switch function click on column filters for the **List of the master recipes** or the **List of control recipes**
- b) enter the desired filter text; wildcards (\*) are allowed
- c) confirm the filter text with Return for it to be applied.
- 3. Automatic recipe switching

Stipulate if the recipes found when switching are also to be opened in the Recipe Editor straight away.

Note: The first 20 recipes found is the maximum that can be opened automatically.

Information

When reloading Runtime, the filter settings of the prefiltering for master recipes are applied again. This also applies if the value of the filter variables changes or new recipes are added to the list that do not correspond to the filter. The list is always recreated exactly after reloading.

### FILTERING FOR CONTROL RECIPES

Configure:

1. <u>Recipe status</u>

Filter the control recipes according to their status. You can select several states using checkboxes or accept the filter from the calling screen.

2. Filling the recipe list

Stipulate if and how the list of control recipes is to be filled when called up.

3. <u>Prefilter</u>

Stipulate if recipes are to be prefiltered. You can filter according to ID, name or job ID. The filter condition is queried in Runtime using a variable

- 4. Column settings
  - a) in the screen switch function click on column filters for the List of the master recipes or the List of control recipes
  - b) enter the desired filter text; wildcards (\*) are allowed
  - c) confirm the filter text with Return for it to be applied.
- 5. <u>Automatic recipe switching</u>

Stipulate if the recipes found when switching are also to be opened in the Recipe Editor straight away.

**Note:** The first 20 recipes found is the maximum that can be opened automatically.



# Information

When reloading Runtime, the filter settings of the prefiltering for control recipes are applied again. Instead, all control recipes that correspond to the current filter in Runtime are displayed (master recipes, status, column filter).

# 6.10.2 Variable assignment

You link variables to elements in the recipe in this tab. This way you can display the statuses of a phase or an operation in another screen and react to these. The execution status of the recipe and the selected object can be displayed by means of string variables or numerical variables. Numerical variables are suitable, for instance, for linking to a combined element. For details on the status, see the Coding of the execution status (on page 74) section.

To display statuses:

- 1. Create a new screen with the desired elements.
- 2. Link the elements to variables
- 3. Link these variables in the screen switching filter to the corresponding objects

### LINK VARIABLES

To link a variable:

- 1. Click on the ... button
- 2. The dialog for selecting a variable is opened
- 3. Select the desired variable

### DISPLAY

The following are displayed:

- For the recipe that is in focus:
  - Name
  - Description
  - Status
  - Execution mode
  - Execution status



- Recipe type
- For the object in the recipe that is in focus (phase or operation):
  - Name
  - Description
  - Unit
  - Type
  - Status
  - Internal state
  - Start time
  - Time of the end
  - Execution counter
  - Duration of execution

ïlter				;
Recipe list settings Variable assignme	ent Tag list settings Control strategies list set	ings		
Master recipe		Control recipe		OK
Name	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	Name	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	Cancel
Version	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	Description	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	Help
Initial version	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	Status (text)	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	
Description	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	Status (numeric)	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	
Status (text)	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	Job ID (text)	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	
Status (numeric)	<no linked="" variable=""></no>			
Operation		General		
	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	Execution mode (text)	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	
Description	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	Execution mode (numeric)	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	
		Execution status (text)	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	
		Execution status (numeric)	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	
		Recipe type (text)	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	
		Recipe type (numeric)	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	
Selected object				
Name	<no linked="" variable=""></no>		<no linked="" variable=""></no>	
Description	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	Status (numeric)	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	
	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	Internal status (text)	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	
	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	Internal status (numeric)	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	
Type (numeric)	<no linked="" variable=""></no>		<no linked="" variable=""></no>	
control strategy	<no linked="" variable=""></no>		<no linked="" variable=""></no>	
Description of control strategy			<no linked="" variable=""></no>	
control strategy number		Execution duration	<no linked="" variable=""></no>	
Element ID	<no linked="" variable=""></no>			



Parameter	Description	
Master recipe	Variable linkings for the master recipe (on page 76).	
	Status is displayed if the recipe has the focus or a phase or operation is highlighted.	
	The following can be linked:	
	Name	
	Version	
	Initial version	
	<ul> <li>Description</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Status (text)</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Status (numeric)</li> </ul>	
Control recipe	Variable linkings for the control recipe. (on page 77)	
	Status is displayed if the recipe has the focus or a phase or operation is highlighted.	
	The following can be linked:	
	Name	
	<ul> <li>Description</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Status (text)</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Status (numeric)</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Job ID (text)</li> </ul>	
Operation	Variable linkings for the operation. (on page 78)	
	Status is displayed if the recipe has the focus or a phase or operation is highlighted.	
	The following can be linked:	
	Name	
	<ul> <li>Description</li> </ul>	
General	Variable linkings for general information. (on page 78)	
	Status is displayed if the recipe has the focus or a phase or operation is highlighted.	
	The following can be linked:	
	<ul> <li>Execution mode (text)</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Execution mode (numerical)</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Execution status (text)</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Execution status (numerical)</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Recipe type (text)</li> </ul>	



	<ul> <li>Recipe type (numeric)</li> </ul>	
Selected Object	Variable linkings for the selected object (phase or operation) (on page 81)	
	Status is displayed if a phase or an operation in the recipe is highlighted.	
	The following can be linked:	
	Name	
	<ul> <li>Description</li> </ul>	
	▶ Unit	
	<ul> <li>Type (text)</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Type (numeric)</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Control strategy</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Description of control strategy</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>control strategy number</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Status (text)</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Status (numeric)</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Internal state (text)</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Internal state (numeric)</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Start time</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Time of the end</li> </ul>	
	Execution counter	
	<ul> <li>Duration of execution</li> </ul>	

#### **CLOSE DIALOG**

Option	Description	
ок	Applies all changes in all tabs and closes the dialog.	
Cancel         Discards all changes in all tabs and closes the dialog.		
Help	Opens online help.	

**Note:** No information is displayed if several objects are highlighted.

# Coding of the execution status

# EXECUTION STATE

The execution state (both for the recipe and the selected object) is coded with different information:

► Byte 0: Execution state



- ▶ Byte 1: Status bits for the status
- Byte 2: Type of object that is part of the status

If no recipe is opened then the string variables are empty and the numerical variables have the value 0.

## BYTE O

Execution states.

The values that are possible are determined by the object type.

String	Decimal	Binary
Idle	1	1
Running	2	10
Executed	3	11
Pause (starting from state: running)	4	100
Paused	5	101
Hold (starting from state: running)	6	110
Hold (starting from state: Paused)	7	111
Hold (starting from state: Restart)	8	1000
Held	9	1001
Restarting (starting from state: Held)	10	1010
Stopping (starting from state: running)	11	1011
Stopping (starting from state: Paused)	12	1100
Stopping (starting from state: Held)	13	1101
Stopped	14	1110
Aborting (starting from state: running)	15	1111
Aborting (starting from state: Paused)	16	10000
Aborting (starting from state: Held)	17	10001
Aborted	18	10010

## BYTE 1

Status bits for the status.

The text is added to the string variable. The corresponding bits are set in the numerical variables



Value for string variable	Value for numeric variable
n elements in different states	0b0000001
Waiting for n element(s)	0b0000010

Type of object that is part of the status. For numerical variables only.

Decimal	Binary	Meaning
1	1	Recipe
2	10	Phase
3	11	Operation object in the recipe

## Master recipe

#### NAME

Name of the currently-opened master recipe or the master recipe that belongs to the currently-opened control recipe or operation.

## DESCRIPTION

Description of the currently-opened master recipe or the master recipe that belongs to the currently-opened control recipe or operation.

## STATUS (TEXT AND NUMERIC)

Status of the currently-opened master recipe or the master recipe that belongs to the currently-opened control recipe or operation.



String	Decimal	Binary
No recipe in active view	0	0
Creation (not visible)	1	1
Edit mode	2	10
Released	3	11
Test mode	4	100
Test in execution	5	101
Terminated with error	6	110
Outdated	9	1001

# **Control recipe**

# NAME

Name or selection of the control recipe. The recipe must be open and have the focus. Is filled in the control recipe and in the operation instance in the control recipe.

# DESCRIPTION

Description of the currently-selected control recipe. The recipe must be open and have the focus. Is filled in the control recipe and in the operation instance in the control recipe.

# STATUS (TEXT AND NUMERIC)

Status of the currently-selected control recipe. The recipe must be open and have the focus. Is filled in the control recipe and in the operation instance in the control recipe.



String	Decimal	Binary
no control recipe active	0	0
Creation (not visible)	1	1
Prepared	2	10
In execution	3	11
Executed	4	100
Terminated with error	5	101
Outdated	7	111

# Operation

## NAME

Name of the operation that is currently open. Is filled in the operation template and in the operation instance.

## DESCRIPTION

Description of the operation currently open. Is filled in the operation template and in the operation instance.

# General

Attention: The content of these variables is not compatible between zenon 7.10 and 7.11.

# **EXECUTION MODE (TEXT AND NUMERIC)**

Currently-set execution mode for the currently-selected recipe. Is filled for all recipe cycles.



String	Decimal	Binary
Automatic	1	01
Semi-automatic	2	10
Manual	3	11

# **EXECUTION STATUS (TEXT AND NUMERIC)**

Status of the recipe

# BYTE O



String	Decimal	Binary
Idle	1	1
In execution	2	10
Executed	3	11
Pausing (starting from state: running)	4	100
Paused	5	101
Holding (starting from state: running)	6	110
Held	9	1001
Restarting (starting from state: Held)	10	1010
Stopping (starting from state: running)	11	1011
Stopped	14	1110
Aborting (starting from state: running)	15	1111
Aborted	18	10010

Value for string variable	Value for numeric variable
n elements in different states	060000001
Waiting for n element(s)	060000010

# BYTE 2

Object type. For the numerical value only

Decimal	Binary	Meaning
1	1	Recipe

# **RECIPE TYPE (TEXT AND NUMERIC)**

Recipe type of the current selected recipe. Is filled for all recipe cycles.



String	Decimal	Binary
Master recipe	1	1
Control recipe	2	10
Operation template	4	100
Operation instance in the master recipe	9	1001
Operation instance in the control recipe	10	1010

# **Selected Object**

The variables for the selected object always contain data if a single phase or a single operation was selected in the currently-selected operation. It is filled for all recipe types. If no object or several objects are selected, then the string variables are empty and the numerical values are 0.

## NAME

Is filled with the name of the phase or the operation.

## DESCRIPTION

Is filled with the description of the phase of the operation.

# UNIT

Is filled with the name of the unit of the selected phase.

## TYPE (TEXT AND NUMERIC)



String	Decimal	Binary
Phase	3	11
Operation	13	1101

# STATUS (TEXT AND NUMERIC)

Is filled with the current execution status of the element.

VALUE FOR A PHASE

# BYTE O



String	Decimal	Binary
Idle	1	1
Running	2	10
Executed	3	11
Pausing	4	100
(Starting from state: running)		
Paused	5	101
Holding	6	110
(Starting from state: running)		
Holding	7	111
(Starting from state: Paused)		
Holding	8	1000
(Starting from state: Restarting)		
Held	9	1001
Restarting	10	1010
(Starting from state: Held)		
Stopping	11	1011
(Starting from state: running)		
Stopping	12	1100
(Starting from state: Paused)		
Stopping	13	1101
(Starting from state: Held)		
Stopped	14	1110
Aborting	15	1111
(Starting from state: running)		
Aborting	16	10000
(Starting from state: Paused)		
Aborting	17	10001
(Starting from state: Held)		
Aborted	18	10010

BYTE 1:



# Always empty.

# BYTE 2:

Object type. For the numerical value only

Variable values:

Decimal	Binary	Meaning
2	10	Phase

# VALUE FOR AN OPERATION INSTANCE

# BYTE O



String	Decimal	Binary
Idle	1	1
Running	2	10
Executed	3	11
Pausing	4	100
(Starting from state: running)		
Paused	5	101
Holding	6	110
(Starting from state: running)		
Held	9	1001
Restarting	10	1010
(Starting from state: Held)		
Stopping	11	1011
(Starting from state: running)		
Stopping	12	1100
(Starting from state: Paused)		
Stopping	13	1101
(Starting from state: Held)		
Stopped	14	1110
Aborting	15	1111
(Starting from state: running)		
Aborting	16	10000
(Starting from state: Paused)		
Aborting	17	10001
(Starting from state: Held)		
Aborted	18	10010



Value for string variable	Value for numeric variable
n elements in different states	060000001

The bit is always set if there are objects in the operation with a different status to that of the operation. Idle and finished are not included in this.

## BYTE 2:

Object type. For the numerical value only.

Variable values:

Decimal	Binary	Meaning
3	11	Operation in the recipe.

# **INTERNAL STATUS (TEXT AND NUMERIC)**

Is filled with the internal execution status of the selected element.

Composition of the internal status:

- ► Byte 0: Status
- ► Byte 1: Status Bits
- Byte 2: Object type

## VALUE FOR A PHASE

#### BYTE O

Internal status. The text can be different for other objects.



String	Decimal	Binary
Idle	1	1
Waiting for phase to be ready for starting	2	10
Waiting for unit allocation	3	11
Waiting for the unit allocation - timeout	4	100
Waiting for exclusive execution	5	101
Waiting for input interlocking	6	110
Waiting for the input interlocking - timeout	7	111
Waiting for phase done condition	8	1000
Waiting for phase done condition - timeout	9	1001
Waiting for phase done condition - error writing value	10	1010
Waiting for minimum execution period	11	1011
Wait until recipe has status "running"	12	1100
Waiting for following conditions	13	1101
Waiting for following condition - timeout	14	1110

#### Status. For numerical variables only.

Variable values:

Decimal	Binary	Meaning
00000001	1	There is an execution error.
00001000	8	There is a communication error.
00010000	16	Loss of communication fixed.
01000000	64	Communication reestablished.

With the phase, only one of the bits can be active for the communication error. With an operation a bit is always set if it is relevant to at least one internal phase.



Object type. For the numerical value only.

Variable values:

Decimal	Binary	Meaning
3	11	Operation in the recipe.

## POSSIBILITIES FOR PHASE

#### BYTE O

All possibilities.

# BYTE 1

All possibilities.

## BYTE 2

Value for numeric variable		Meaning
Decimal	Binary	
2	10	Phase

## POSSIBILITIES FOR OPERATION INSTANCES

#### BYTE O

#### Variable values:

String	Decimal	Binary
Idle	1	1
Execution of the internal objects	8	1000
Waiting for following conditions	13	1101

## BYTE 1

Always empty.



Variable values:

Decimal	Binary	Meaning
3	11	Operation in the recipe.

#### **START TIME**

Time at which the execution of the selected object has started.

#### TIME OF THE END

Time at which the execution of the selected object has finished.

# **DURATION OF EXECUTION**

Time period that has expired during the execution.

## **EXECUTION COUNTER**

Number denoting how often the element was executed

# 6.10.3 Tag list settings

Two parameter lists with identical options are available. These can be configured and used individually.

The parameter lists are created in the screen and configured in screen switching.



If you want to edit the list directly using the monitor, activate the Multi-Touch functionality. You can find detailed information in relation to this in the Configure interactions chapter.

	Description		Туре	Tag data type	Variable	Tag	Cano
Filter text	7	Filter text	7 Filtertext 🍸	Filter text 🛛 🖓	Filter text 🛛 🖓	Filter text	Held
<			· · · · · ·			>	
Column selection	Column format						
Show command tags							
Changeable in master recip	e	Changeable in the control recip	be in the second s	🗹 Changea	able in the current recipe	type	
Not changeable in the mast	ter recipe	Not changeable in the control i	recipe	Not char	ngeable in the current re	cipe type	
Show return tags							
/ariable for displaying the numbe	er of entries						
<no linked="" variable=""></no>							
ag List 2							
ag List 2 Name	Description		Туре	Tag data type		Tag	
-	Description	Filter text 5	Type 7 Filtertext 🖓	Tag data type Filter text	Variable Filter text T	-	
Name		Filter text 7					
Name Filter text	7					Filter text	
Name Filter text						Filter text	
Name Filter text	7					Filter text	
Aame     Filter text     Column selection	Column format		7 Filter text 🛛	Filter text 🛛		Filter text	
Aame     Filter text     Column selection Show command tags	Column format		7 Filter text 🖓	Filter text V	Filter text 🛛 🖓	Filter text	
Name Filter text Column selection Column selection Show command tags Changeable in master recip Not changeable in the mast	Column format	Changeable in the control recip	7 Filter text 🖓	Filter text V	Filter text 🛛 🖓	Filter text	
Aame     Filter text     Column selection     Column selection     Column selection for the selection for th	Column format	Changeable in the control recip	7 Filter text 🖓	Filter text V	Filter text 🛛 🖓	Filter text	
Name Filter text Column selection Column selection Show command tags Changeable in master recip Not changeable in the mast	Column format	Changeable in the control recip	7 Filter text 🖓	Filter text V	Filter text 🛛 🖓	Filter text	



## TAG LIST 1

Parameter	Description			
Tag List 1	Display of the configured lists. The columns can:			
	▶ be filtered			
	have their width changed by dragging the column title with the mouse			
	be arranged by means of Drag&Drop with the mouse			
	<b>Note:</b> The filtering and configuring in Runtime can also be prevented by means of the properties of the <b>Header</b> group.			
	Attention: If a filter is created and the display of the filter line is then prevented in Runtime, the filter is applied but can no longer be configured.			
Column selection	A dialog for choosing the columns (on page 94) which shall be displayed is opened			
Column format	Opens a dialog to format the columns (on page 98).			
Display command tag	Selection of the command parameters which should be displayed. Possible selection by activating the checkboxes:			
	Parameter value can be changed in master recipe: Command tags for which the Parameter value can be changed in master recipe option has been set in the Editor are displayed.			
	Changeable in control recipe: Command tags for which the Changeable in control recipe option has been set in the master recipe are displayed.			
	Changeable in the current recipe type: Command tags that can be changed in the current recipe type are displayed.			
	Cannot be changed in the master recipe: Command tags for which the Parameter value can be changed in master recipe option has not been set in the Editor are displayed.			
	Not changeable in the control recipe Command tags for which the Changeable in control recipe option has not been set in the master recipe are displayed.			
	Cannot be changed in the current recipe type: Command tags that cannot be changed in the current recipe type are displayed.			
	As many connections as desired can be configured. Activating all checkboxes leads to all command parameters being displayed.			
Display return tags	Active: Return parameters are displayed:			
Variable for displaying the number of entries	Allows the linking of a variable that contains the number of			



parameters displayed in the list in Runtime.
Click on button opens the dialog for selecting variables.

#### TAG LIST 2

Parameter	Description
Tag List 2	Parameter list 2 with identical configuration possibilities to <b>Parameter Tag 1</b> .

Longer texts can also be displayed in Runtime over several lines using the Automatic word wrap property.

In the Editor, go to **Representation** in the properties of the respective list properties and activate the checkbox of the **Automatic word wrap** property.

The line height must be amended manually.

#### CLOSE DIALOG

Option	Description		
ок	Applies all changes in all tabs and closes the dialog.		
Cancel	Discards all changes in all tabs and closes the dialog.		
Help	Opens online help.		

The tag lists are recreated in Runtime if:

- A different element is selected in the recipe
- The selected phase was edited
- The recipe was saved (even if the client has saved it)

# Information

Backward compatibility for displaying command parameters:

The option was expanded with version 7.11 and changed from radio buttons to checkboxes. For backward compatibility, this means:

Backward compatible writing is possible if:

Only one checkbox is set for the changeable parameters

or the combination of all checkboxes lets all parameters through

*If the combination of the checkboxes results in a setting that was not previously configurable with zenon 7.10 or earlier, no parameters are displayed in the list.* 



# 6.10.4 Control strategies list settings

In this tab, you define how the list of control strategies is displayed in Runtime. You can also pre-define filters.

lter					
ecipe list settings Variable assign	ment Tag list settings Cont	rol strategies list settings			
Control strategies list					OK
Control strategy number Description Name					Cancel
Filter tex	xt 🛛 🖓	Filter text	$\nabla$	Filter text 🛛 🌱	Help
Column selection	Column format				



Option	Description		
List of control strategies	Configuration of how the list is displayed in Runtime. Select the desired columns and define a filter if required. The following can be done with the columns in Runtime:		
	be filtered		
	have their width changed by dragging the column title with the mouse		
	be arranged by means of Drag&Drop with the mouse		
	<b>Note:</b> The filtering and configuring in Runtime can also be prevented by means of the properties of the <b>Header</b> group.		
	Attention: If a filter is created and the display of the filter line is then prevented in Runtime, the filter is applied but can no longer be configured.		
Column selection	A dialog for choosing the columns (on page 94) which shall be displayed is opened		
Column format	Opens the dialog to format the columns (on page 98).		

## CLOSE DIALOG

Option	Description		
ок	Applies all changes in all tabs and closes the dialog.		
Cancel	Discards all changes in all tabs and closes the dialog.		
Help	Opens online help.		

# 6.10.5 Column selection

Column selection is available for all configurable lists. Configuration is carried out by means of a dialog that offers the same respective options. The columns available depend on the list to be configured. Examples of concrete lists then follow the documentation of the options.



#### **OPTIONS**

Option	Function         List of columns that can be displayed in the table.         Columns that are displayed in the table.			
Available columns				
Selected columns				
Add ->	Moves the selected column from the available ones to the selected items. After you confirm the dialog with OK, they are shown in the detail view.			
Add all ->	Moves all available columns to the selected columns.			
<- Remove	Removes the marked columns from the selected items and shows them in the list of available columns. After you confirm the dialog with OK, they are removed from the detail view.			
<- Remove all	All columns are removed from the list of the selected columns.			
Up	Moves the selected entry upward. This function is only available for unique entries, multiple selection is not possible.			
Down	Moves the selected entry downward. This function is only available for unique entries, multiple selection is not possible.			

# CLOSE DIALOG

Options	Description
ок	Applies settings and closes the dialog.
Cancel	Discards all changes and closes the dialog.
Help	Opens online help.

**Note:** These settings are only used in Runtime for dockable windows (on page 127) if there is no Runtime profile available for the user who is logged in.

# **EXAMPLES OF COLUMN SELECTION**

Column selection for list of the master recipes (on page 137):



Column settings Column selection			ОК
Available columns: Master recipe ID Outdated by (user name) Release by (user name) Released by Released on	Add> Add all ->	Selected columns: Master recipe name Master recipe description Master recipe state Recipe type REE state REE mode Outdated at Outdated by	Cancel Help
		Up Down	

Column selection for list of the control recipes (on page 203):



olumn settings Column selection				×
Available columns: Operation ID Release by (user name)	Add> Add all -> < Delete <- Remove all	Selected columns: Operation name Operation type Operation description Operation status Released on Released by		Cancel
		Up Do	wn	

Column selection for list of the operations (on page 190) (only available in Runtime):

Column selection for Tag lists (on page 89)

Column settings	
Column selection       OK         Available columns:       Changeable in control recipe         Driver name       Add>         Max. value variable       Add>         Max. value variable       Add all ->         Modified       Reason for value change necessary         String length       < Delete	



			ОК
Available columns	Add>	Selected columns control strategy number	Cancel
	Add all ->	Description Name	Help
	< Remove		
	<- Remove all		

Column selection for control strategies (on page 93):

# 6.10.6 Column Format

In this dialog you define the column format:

Configuration of the properties of the columns for configurable lists. The settings have an effect on the respective list in the Editor or - when configuring screen switching - in Runtime.

Column properties				×
Format columns Available columns	Settings Text Width 100 Character Alignment Left Centered Right	User-defined colors Use user-defined colors Text color Background color	OK	



# AVAILABLE COLUMNS

Option	Description
Available columns	List of the available columns via <b>Column selection</b> . The highlighted column is configured via the options in the <b>Settings</b> area.

#### SETTINGS

Option	Description	
Settings	Settings for selected column.	
Labeling	Name for column title.	
	The column title is online language switchable. To do this, the @ character must be entered in front of the name.	
Width	Width of the column in characters. Calculation: Number time average character width of the selected font.	
Alignment	Alignment. Selection by means of radio buttons.	
	Possible settings:	
	• Left: Text is justified on the left edge of the column.	
	• Centered: Text is displayed centered in the column.	
	• <b>Right</b> : Text is justified on the right edge of the column.	
User-defined colors	Properties in order to define user-defined colors for text and background. The settings have an effect on the Editor and Runtime.	
	Note:	
	These settings are only available for configurable lists.	
	In addition, the respective focus in the list can be signalized in Runtime by means of different text and background colors. These are configured using the project properties.	
User defined colors	Active: User-defined colors are used.	
Text color	Color for text display. Clicking on the color opens the color palette to select a color.	
Background color	Color for the display of the cell background. Clicking on the color opens the color palette to select a color.	



Lock column filter in the Runtime	<ul> <li>Active: The filter for this column cannot be changed in Runtime.</li> </ul>
	Note: Only available for:
	Batch Control
	Extended Trend
	<ul> <li>Filter screens</li> </ul>
	Message Control
	<ul> <li>Recipe Group Manager</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Shift Management</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Context List</li> </ul>

#### **CLOSE DIALOG**

Option	Description	
ок	Applies all changes in all tabs and closes the dialog.	
Cancel	Discards all changes in all tabs and closes the dialog.	
Help	Opens online help.	

**Note:** These settings are only used in Runtime for dockable windows (on page 127) if there is no Runtime profile available for the user who is logged in.

# 6.11 Keyboards

Parameters can be amended in Runtime. Adapted keyboards are available for this.

**Note:** Variable values can also be set outside the established limits with keyboards. These consequently lead to a validation error.

## **KEYBOARDS FOR BATCH CONTROL**

You define keyboards for use in the Batch Control module in general in the properties for the module in the Edit tag/Keyboards group. Define the desired keyboards for:

- Binary tags
- Numeric tags
- ► String tags
- Time period tags



With the **Reason for value change necessary** property, you can also stipulate that each value change must have a reason. If this property is active, a dialog to enter the reason is opened before the change is made.

## **BEHAVIOR IN RUNTIME**

In Runtime, double-clicking opens the entry of a list of the respective linked keyboard. Clicking in different columns can also open different keyboards.

# **KEYBOARD FOR WRITING SET VALUE FOR PARAMETER**

You define keyboards for writing set values for individual parameters in the properties of the respective parameter in the **Write set value/Keyboards** group. To do this:

- 1. Navigate to the Write set value group in the parameter properties.
- 2. Activate, in the Keyboards subgroup, the Use screen Keyboard property
- 3. In the Screen Keyboard property, define which keyboard screen is to be called up in Runtime

# **USING A KEYBOARD**

Values can be edited in the master recipe and in the control recipe if the recipe status and the parameter settings allow this. The minimum and maximum can only be changed in the master recipe and only for numerical parameters and duration parameters.

The following applies for the use of keyboards Batch Control screens:

- Only one keyboard can be active at a time. If a new one is called up, the previous one is closed.
- ► If the keyboard is active and the mouse is double-clicked with the pointer in a column in which nothing can be changed, nothing happens.
- The following is applicable to value, minimum and maximum of a parameter:
  - If a parameter itself is linked to a keyboard, this is used.
  - If no keyboard is linked to the parameter, the keyboard that is generally linked to Batch Control in the Edit tag group is used.
  - If a keyboard is linked to the parameter, but this is no longer available, the keyboard that is also generally linked to Batch Control in the Edit tag group is used.
  - No keyboard is opened if this also does not exist.
- ► Keyboards for binary inputs can be provided using the **On**, **Off** and **Toggle** keys.
- ▶ When switching the units of measurement, the min/max values and the unit name are sent to the system variables again.



- ► For the Changeable in control recipe property, the keyboard for Binary tags defined in the Edit tag group is searched for. If none is linked, then a search is carried out for a keyboard with the standard name SETBOOLKBD. No keyboard is opened if this also does not exist.
- Keyboards that are directly linked to the parameter can no longer be changed after a recipe has been approved. If the keyboard linked to the parameter is deleted, only the keyboard defined in the Edit tag group can be used.

# 6.12 zenon functions

With zenon functions, control commands can be sent to the batch execution and pre-defined control recipes can be created:

- **Export Batch recipes** (on page 102): Exports recipes to an XML file.
- ▶ Import Batch recipes (on page 108): Imports recipes from an XML file.
- Execute recipe command change or mode change (on page 110): Sends control commands to the batch execution.
- Create control recipe (on page 115): Creates in Runtime, a control recipe that has been pre-defined in the Editor
- Release master recipe (on page 119): Releases a master recipe in Runtime.

# 6.12.1 Export Batch recipes

Recipes can be exported to an XML file with the Export Batch recipes function. To create the function:

- 1. In the zenon Editor, navigate to the Functions node
- 2. Select New function
- 3. Go to the **Batch Control** in the function selections
- 4. Select Export Batch recipes



	Batch	n Control	×
ML export			
Use recipe filter for			 ОК
O Master recipes	<ul> <li>Control recipe</li> </ul>	Operations	Cancel
Recipe Filter			Help
Recipe names are case sensitiv	e		
Vorlagenrezept			
Name mit Wildcards	¥		
Version			
Alle	¥		
Status Vorlagenrezept			
Freigegeben oder veraltet	<b>v</b>		
Apply to found recipes			
Alle	¥		
Control recipe			
Name mit Wildcards	¥		
Status control recipe			
Alle	¥		
Apply to found recipes			
Alle	<b>Y</b>		
Output file			
Naming			
Dateiname	¥		
• Overwrite existing file Note: Files without path will be cre	ated in the export folder		
Show this dialog in the Runtime			

# 5. the dialog for engineering the function is opened



# USE RECIPE FILTER FOR

Parameter	Description	
Use recipe filter for	Selection of what the recipe filter is applied to:	
	Master recipe	
	Control recipe	
	The filter is processed from top to bottom For example, <b>version</b> is only applied to the recipes found in the <b>master recipe</b> filter.	
Master recipe	Active: It is filtered on Master recipes.	
Control recipe	Active: It is filtered on control recipes.	
	<b>Note:</b> The attendant master recipes must also be selected. If no master recipe has been selected for the control recipe, the filer cannot find the recipe being searched for in Runtime.	
	Hint: If the master recipe is not known, filtering of all master recipes with a placeholder is recommended.	

#### **RECIPE FILTER**

Parameter	Description
Recipe Filter	Configuration of the recipe filter
Master recipe	Parameters for the selection of the master recipe. Select from drop-down list:
	Name with wildcards: A name with placeholder can be entered into the input field. Filtering according to this name is carried out.
	Name from variable: The name of the master recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button opens the dialog for selecting variables.
	ID from variable: The ID of the master recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button opens the dialog for selecting variables.
Version	Selection of the version (on page 187) from the drop-down list:
	> All:



The version stated is ignored and each version found is used.
<ul> <li>Fixed version:</li> <li>This filters for versions that are entered in this field.</li> <li>Highest possible version: 4294967295</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Version from variable: The version of the master recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button in order to open the dialog for selecting a variable.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Only oldest version:</li> <li>Only the recipe with the oldest version number is used.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Only newest version:</li> <li>Only the recipe with the newest version number is used.</li> </ul>
Default: All



State master recipe	Status of the master recipe. Select from drop-down list.
	When selecting master recipes for recipe filters:
	▶ All
	Edit mode
	Released
	Test mode
	Test running
	Terminated with error
	Outdated
	When selecting control recipes for recipe filters:
	Released or outdated
	Released
	Outdated
Apply to found recipes	Definition of which master recipes the filter is applied to. Select from drop-down list:
	▶ All
	Only oldest ID
	Only newest ID
Control recipe	Parameters for the selection of the control recipe. Select from drop-down list:
	Name with wildcards: A name with placeholder can be entered into the input field. Filtering according to this name is carried out.
	Name from variable: The name of the control recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button opens the dialog for selecting variables.
	<ul> <li>ID from variable: The ID of the master recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button opens the dialog for selecting variables. Precisely one recipe can be found if the variable value at the time of execution is a valid ID of a control recipe.</li> </ul>
	Job ID from variable: Finds control recipes that have the given job ID number. Any type of variable can be linked. The value is automatically converted into STRING.



State control recipe	Definition of which recipe status the filter is applied to. Select from drop-down list:
	> All
	Prepared
	In execution
	Executed
	Terminated with error
	Outdated
Apply to found recipes	Definition of which control recipes the filter is applied to. Select from drop-down list:
	▶ All
	<ul> <li>Only oldest ID</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Only newest ID</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> Only the respective IDs are taken into account for master recipes and control recipes. The search for control recipes can find several recipes with this filter. This filter must also be activated for the master recipes for a unique result.
Operation	Parameters for the selection of the operation. Select from drop-down list:
	Name with wildcards: A name with placeholder can be entered into the input field. Filtering according to this name is carried out.
	Name from variable: The name of the operation is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button opens the dialog for selecting variables.
	<ul> <li>ID from variable: The ID of the operation is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button opens the dialog for selecting variables. Precisely one recipe can be found if the variable value at the time of execution is a valid ID of an operation.</li> </ul>
Status operation	Definition of which recipe status the filter is applied to. Select from drop-down list:
	► All
	► Edit mode
	► Released



Apply to found recipes	Definition of which operations the filter is applied to. Select from drop-down list:
	▶ All
	<ul> <li>Only oldest ID</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Only newest ID</li> </ul>
Output file	Selection of the file name and the save location.
Naming	<ul> <li>File name: The name of the XML file can be entered manually or when selecting a file from the respective save path.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>File name from variable: The name of the XML file is taken from the linked variable.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Create file name from recipe name: The name of the XML file is made up of the recipe type, recipe name and recipe version.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Create file name from recipe ID: The name of the XML file is made up of the recipe type and recipe ID.</li> </ul>
Overwrite existing file	Active: If there are naming conflicts, the pre-existing XML file is overwritten with the names.
Note: Files without a path will be created in the export folder	Files without the path stated will be automatically created in the export folder.
Show this dialog in the Runtime	Active: The dialog is shown in Runtime and can be operated.
ок	Applies settings and closes the dialog.
<b>A</b> I	Discards all changes and closes the dialog.
Cancel	Discalus all changes and closes the dialog.

# 6.12.2 Import Batch recipes

Recipes can be imported to an XML file with the Import Batch recipes function. To create the function:

- 1. In the zenon Editor, navigate to the **Functions** node
- 2. Select New function
- 3. Go to the **Batch Control** in the function selections



## 4. select Import Batch recipes

5. the dialog for configuring functions is opened

	Batch Control		
nport XML			
import source			ОК
File name			Cancel
0			cancer
From variable	<no linked="" variable=""></no>		Help
Note: the file without p	bath is searched in the export folder		
import options			
Action for name conflic	ts in master recipes		
Create new recipe			
Overwrite old recip	e		
O Create new version	1		
🔘 Skip			
Action for naming conf	licts in control recipes/operation templates		
Create new recipe			
Overwrite old recip	e		
🔾 Skip			
Job ID for new control	recipes		
Link individual job v	ariable		
		×	
Apply value from job	variable		
Starting control r			
Creating control	recipe		
Show this dialog in the	Runtime		



#### IMPORT SOURCE

Parameter	Description
File name	Imports the XML file with the selected file name.
From variable	Imports the XML file from the linked variable.

#### **IMPORT OPTIONS**

Parameter	Description
Action for name conflicts in master recipes	Selection of a master recipe name that already exists.
Create new recipe	Creates a new recipe with the name.
Overwrite old recipe	Overwrites an existing recipe with the name.
Create new version	Creates a new version of the recipe.
Skip	Skips this step.
Action in the event of naming conflicts in control recipes/operations	Selection when issuing a control recipe or operation that already exists.
	Creates a new recipe with the name.
CREATE NEW RECIPE	
Overwrite old recipe	Overwrites an existing recipe with the name.
Create new version	Creates a new version of the recipe.
Skip	Skips this step.
Job ID for new control recipes	Job ID for newly-created control recipe
Link individual job variable	Links an individual order variable for each control recipe
Apply value from job variable in the event	The value from the job variable is taken with
of	<ul> <li>Starting control recipe</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Creating control recipe</li> </ul>
Show this dialog in the Runtime	This dialog can also be operated in Runtime.

# 6.12.3 Execute recipe command change or mode change

You can send control commands to the batch execution with this function. To create the function:



- 1. In the zenon Editor, navigate to the **Functions** node
- 2. Select New function
- 3. Go to the **Batch Control** in the function selections
- 4. select Execute recipe command/change mode
- 5. the dialog for configuring functions is opened

	Batch Control	
xecute recipe command change/mode d	hange	
Action		ОК
		Cancel
Command	Mode	Cancer
Ignore 🗸	Ignore V	Help
Use recipe filter for		
Master recipes		
Control recipe		
Recipe filter		
Master recipe		
Name with wildcards		
Version		
All		
State master recipe		
Released or outdated		
Apply to found recipes		
All		
L	-	
Control recipe		
Name with wildcards		
State control recipe		
All		
Apply to found recipes		
All		



#### ACTION

Parameter	Description
Action	Selection of the action to be executed:
	Command
	Mode
Command	Selection of the command to be executed from drop-down list:
	▶ Ignore
	<ul> <li>Start recipe</li> </ul>
	Recipe pausing
	Recipe resuming
	Recipe holding
	Restart recipe
	Recipe stopping
	<ul> <li>Recipe aborting</li> </ul>
Mode	Selection of the mode to which the recipe is to be switched:
	▶ Ignore
	<ul> <li>Automatic</li> </ul>
	Semi-automatic
	Manual

#### USE RECIPE FILTER FOR

Parameter	Description
Use recipe filter for	Selection of what the recipe filter is applied to:
	Master recipe
	Control recipe
	The filter is processed from top to bottom For example, version is only applied to the recipes found in the master recipe filter.
Master recipe	Active: It is filtered on Master recipes.
Control recipe	Active: It is filtered on control recipes.
	Note: The attendant master recipes must also be selected. If no master recipe has been selected for the control recipe, the filer cannot find the recipe being



searched for in Runtime.
Hint: If the master recipe is not known, filtering of all master recipes with a placeholder is recommended.

#### **RECIPE FILTER**

Parameter	Description
Recipe Filter	Configuration of the recipe filter
Master recipe	Parameters for the selection of the master recipe. Select from drop-down list:
	<ul> <li>Name with wildcards: A name with placeholder can be entered into the input field. Filtering according to this name is carried out.</li> </ul>
	Name from variable: The name of the master recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button opens the dialog for selecting variables.
	<ul> <li>ID from variable:</li> <li>The ID of the master recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button opens the dialog for selecting variables.</li> </ul>
Version	Selection of the version (on page 187) from the drop-down list:
	<ul> <li>All: The version stated is ignored and each version found is used.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Fixed version:</li> <li>This filters for versions that are entered in this field.</li> <li>Highest possible version: 4294967295</li> </ul>
	Version from variable: The version of the master recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button in order to open the dialog for selecting a variable.
	<ul> <li>Only oldest version:</li> <li>Only the recipe with the oldest version number is used.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Only newest version:</li> <li>Only the recipe with the newest version number is used.</li> </ul>
	▶ Default: All



State master recipe	Status of the master recipe. Select from drop-down list.
-	When selecting master recipes for recipe filters:
	▶ All
	Test mode
	Test running
	When selecting control recipes for recipe filters:
	Released or outdated
	Released
	<ul> <li>Outdated</li> </ul>
Apply to found upping	
Apply to found recipes	Definition of which master recipes the filter is applied to. Select from drop-down list:
	▶ All
	Only oldest ID
	Only newest ID
Control recipe	Parameters for the selection of the control recipe. Select from drop-down list:
	<ul> <li>Name with wildcards:</li> <li>A name with placeholder can be entered into the input field. Filtering according to this name is carried out.</li> </ul>
	Name from variable: The name of the control recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button opens the dialog for selecting variables.
	<ul> <li>ID from variable: The ID of the master recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button opens the dialog for selecting variables. Precisely one recipe can be found if the variable value at the time of execution is a valid ID of a control recipe.</li> </ul>
	Job ID from variable: Finds control recipes that have the given job ID number. Any type of variable can be linked. The value is automatically converted into STRING.
State control recipe	Definition of which recipe status the filter is applied to. Select from drop-down list:
	▶ All
	Prepared
	Running



Apply to found recipes	Definition of which control recipes the filter is applied to. Select from drop-down list:
	▶ All
	<ul> <li>Only oldest ID</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Only newest ID</li> </ul>
ок	Applies settings and closes the dialog.
Cancel	Discards all changes and closes the dialog.
Help	Opens online help.

## 6.12.4 Create control recipe

With the help of the **Create control recipe** function, a pre-defined control recipe can be created in the Editor in Runtime. To create the function:

- 1. In the zenon Editor, navigate to the **Functions** node.
- 2. Select New function.
- 3. Go to the **Batch Control** node in the function selection.
- 4. Select Create control recipe.

The dialog for engineering a function is opened.



#### CONFIGURATION DIALOG

ch Control							
eate control recipe							
Recipe Filter							OK
Recipe names are case							Cancel
Master recipe							Help
Name with wildcards	$\sim$						Tielp
Version							
All	~						
Apply to found recipes							
Apply to found recipes Oldest ID only Control recipe name	~						
Oldest ID only	~						
Oldest ID only Control recipe name	~						
Oldest ID only Control recipe name Control recipe name Automatic name							
Oldest ID only Control recipe name Control recipe name Automatic name Job ID	~						
Oldest ID only Control recipe name Control recipe name Automatic name	~						
Oldest ID only Control recipe name Control recipe name Automatic name Job ID Link individual job varia	v			 1			
Oldest ID only Control recipe name Control recipe name Automatic name Job ID Link individual job varia Apply value from job varia	w able ariable at:			×			
Oldest ID only Control recipe name Control recipe name Automatic name Job ID Link individual job varia	w able ariable at:			 2			



#### **RECIPE FILTER**

Parameter	Description				
Recipe Filter	Configuration of the recipe filter				
	The filter is processed from top to bottom For example, version is only applied to the recipes found in the master recipe filter.				
Recipe names are case sensitive	<ul> <li>Active: Recipe name are case sensitive.</li> <li>A distinction is made between Recipe and RECIPE.</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>Inactive: Capitalization is not taken into account.</li> <li>Recipe Is handled as RECIPE.</li> </ul>				
Master recipe	Parameters for the selection of the master recipe. Select from drop-down list:				
	Name with wildcards: A name with placeholder can be entered into the input field. Filtering according to this name is carried out.				
	Name from variable: The name of the master recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button opens the dialog for selecting variables.				
	<ul> <li>ID from variable:</li> <li>The ID of the master recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button opens the dialog for selecting variables.</li> </ul>				
Version	Selection of the version (on page 187) from the drop-down list:				
	<ul> <li>All: The version stated is ignored and each version found is used.</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>Fixed version: This filters for versions that are entered in this field. Highest possible version: 4294967295</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>Version from variable: The version of the master recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button in order to open the dialog for selecting a variable.</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>Only oldest version:</li> <li>Only the recipe with the oldest version number is used.</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>Only newest version:</li> <li>Only the recipe with the newest version number is used.</li> </ul>				



	Default: All
Apply to found recipes	Definition of which recipes the filter is applied to. Selection of ID from drop-down list:
	> All
	Only oldest ID
	Only newest ID

#### CONTROL RECIPE NAME

Parameter	Description
Control recipe name	Configuration of the name of the control recipe.
Control recipe name	Selection of the naming from the drop-down list:
	Automatic name: Name is automatically issued on creation
	Name from variable: Name is taken from a variable. Click on button in order to open the dialog for selecting a variable. If there is already a recipe with the name that has been transferred from the variable, no new control recipe is created.

#### JOB ID

Parameter	Description
Job ID	Configuration of the Job ID.
Link individual job variable	Active: A job variable (on page 62) can be linked. The variable must already be configured. Selection of the variable from the drop-down list:
Apply value from job variable	<ul> <li>Definition of the time at which the job ID is transferred.</li> <li>During:</li> <li>Starting control recipe</li> <li>Creating control recipe</li> </ul>
ок	Applies settings and closes the dialog.
Cancel	Discards all changes and closes the dialog. The function is nevertheless created, however without a defined target.
Help	Opens online help.

All filters always have an effect on a group of recipes with the same name. Depending on the configuration, more than one recipe can remain left over.



**For example:** Recipes with the **Test**\* filter are searched for. The result is 5 versions of **Test\_1** and 3 versions of **Test\_2**. If filtering for the latest version is continued, then two control recipes are created, one each for the recipe with the highest version number per group.

Note for variable selection using name or ID: For the selection of variables according to name or ID, numerical variables and string variables can be selected respectively. The data types are converted to the respective correct form.

## 6.12.5 Release master recipe

With the help of the **Release master recipe** function, it is possible to release a master recipe in Runtime. The function releases the master recipes that have been found whose properties suit and whose possibly-embedded partial recipes have already been released. It can be instigated by a computer in the zenon network.

To create the function:

- 1. In the zenon Editor, navigate to the **Functions** node.
- 2. Select New function.
- 3. Go to the **Batch Control** node in the function selection.
- 4. Select Release master recipe.

The dialog for engineering a function is opened.

#### **CONFIGURATION DIALOG**

elease master recipe	01/
Recipe Filter	OK
Recipe names are case sensitive	Cancel
Master recipe	Help
Name with wildcards V	
Version	
All ~	
Status	
Edit mode $\checkmark$	
Apply to found recipes	
Oldest ID only 🗸	



#### **RECIPE FILTER**

Parameter	Description
Recipe Filter	Configuration of the recipe filter
	The filter is processed from top to bottom For example, version is only applied to the recipes found in the master recipe filter.
Recipe names are case sensitive	<ul> <li>Active: Recipe name are case sensitive.</li> <li>A distinction is made between Recipe and RECIPE.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Inactive: Capitalization is not taken into account.</li> <li>Recipe Is handled as RECIPE.</li> </ul>
Master recipe	Parameters for the selection of the master recipe. Select from drop-down list:
	Name with wildcards: A name with placeholder can be entered into the input field. Filtering according to this name is carried out.
	Name from variable: The name of the master recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button opens the dialog for selecting variables.
	<ul> <li>ID from variable:</li> <li>The ID of the master recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button opens the dialog for selecting variables.</li> </ul>
Version	Selection of the version (on page 187) from the drop-down list:
	<ul> <li>All: The version stated is ignored and each version found is used.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Fixed version: This filters for versions that are entered in this field. Highest possible version: 4294967295</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Version from variable: The version of the master recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button in order to open the dialog for selecting a variable.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Only oldest version:</li> <li>Only the recipe with the oldest version number is used.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Only newest version:</li> <li>Only the recipe with the newest version number is used.</li> </ul>



	Default: All
Status	Selection of the status that the recipe must have, from a drop-down list:
	Edit mode
	Test mode
	Default: Edit mode
Apply to found recipes	Definition of which recipes the filter is applied to. Selection of ID from drop-down list:
	> All
	Only oldest ID
	<ul> <li>Only newest ID</li> </ul>
	Default: Only oldest ID
ок	Applies settings and closes the dialog.
Cancel	Discards all changes and closes the dialog.
	The function is nevertheless created, however without a defined target.
Help	Opens online help.

All filters always have an effect on a group of recipes with the same name. Depending on the configuration, more than one recipe can remain left over.

**For example:** Recipes with the **Test**<sup>\*</sup> filter are searched for. The result is 5 versions of **Test\_1** and 3 versions of **Test\_2**. If there is further filtering for the most recent version, the most recent version of **Test\_1** and the most recent version of **Test\_2** is released.

Note for variable selection using name or ID: For the selection of variables according to name or ID, numerical variables and string variables can be selected respectively. The data types are converted to the respective correct form.

# 6.13 Rules for recipe creation

Rules can be defined for the creation of recipes in Runtime, in the editor in the General/Recipe creation properties group.



#### **DISALLOW PARALLEL BRANCHING**

You stipulate whether parallel branching is permitted using the **Disallow parallel branching**. If the property is activated, validation in Runtime does not accept any parallel branches. Recipes that have already been validated are validated again before starting. Recipes that have already been started are also canceled after this property has been activated.

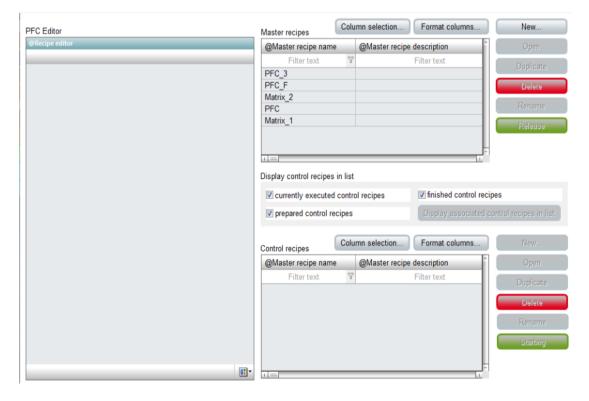
# 7. Conversion

If the version of zenon is changed, all recipes must be ended before converting the project.

Recipes that are running continue to be executed after a restart. The restart only functions within the same zenon version.

# 8. Configure and control in the Runtime

The entire management, creation and processing of the recipes is done in the Runtime. Editing in the zenon Editor is not possible.





**Note:** Runtime files up to and including version 7.00 SPO are not compatible with subsequent versions. Versions from version 7.10 and later are compatible.

#### SYNCHRONIZATION

When loading, opening, duplicating and approving a recipe or operation, a check is made to see if the configuration of units, phases etc. has been changed in the superordinate instance, such as the Editor. For details, see the Synchronization (on page 249) chapter.

#### **SELECTION PROCEDURE IN LISTS:**

- ► The keyboard shortcut Ctrl+A: selects all elements
- ▶ The keyboard shortcut Ctrl+mouse click: adds master recipe to the existing selection
- Shift key + mouse click: Extends selection from the currently selected master recipe to the clicked master recipe

#### SAVING OF RECIPES WHEN CLOSING RUNTIME

If Runtime is closed and there are still recipes that have not been saved, you are asked if these recipes are to be saved. In order for this query to not prevent Runtime closing, Runtime is automatically closed after 15 seconds if nothing is entered. Unsaved recipes are then discarded.

## 8.1 User interface

The user interface of the editor in Runtime can be configured with toolbars and dockable windows.



	- / 🎦 📑 🖳 🐺 🖷 🖻	L III 🕾			😑 🖃 🗅 🗙 🕩	T #					7
Status /		Recipe type	OFF states	REE mode	MR Status	Control recipe name		Master recipe name	_	Operation name /	ñ
							~		-		7
Filter text		Filter text V			Filter text	1 11101 10111	Y		¥	Filter text	
it mode	Matrix_op	Matrix EN	@ldle	@Automatical	@Released	Control_PFC_F		PFC_F		Operation_1	
it mode	Matrix_2	Matrix EN	@ldle	@Automatical	@Released	Control_1		PFC_F		Operation_2	
lit mode	PFC_3	PFC EN	@ldle	@Automatical						Operation_3	
it mode	Matrix_1	Matrix EN	@ldle	@Automatical							
lit mode	Nouvelle recette 'maître'	Matrix EN	@ldle	@Automatical							
leased	PFC_5	PFC EN	@ldle	@Automatical							
leased	Copy from PFC_3	PFC EN	@ldle	@Automatical							
leased	PFC_F	PFC EN	@ldle	@Automatical							
leased leased	PFC_F PFC_4	PFC EN PFC EN	@ldle @ldle	@Automatical @Automatical							
leased	Copy from PFC	PFC EN	@ldle	@Automatical @Automatical							
leased	Matrix M 2	Matrix EN	@ldle	@Automatical @Automatical							
	manix_m_c	THOMAS THE	Service .	es futormatical							
				•	< III				P	4	
*Matrix_2 PFC_F	Control_1 ×										
*Matrix_2 PFC_F	Control_1 ×										
*Matrix_2 PFC_F	Control_1 ×										
*Matrix,2 (PFC,F)	Control_1 ×				TestUnit Prototype						
"Matrix_2 (PFC,P	Control_1 ×										
"Matrix_2 (PFC,F	Control_1 ×										
*Matrix_2 FFC_F	Control_1 ×										
"Matrix_2 PFC.F	Control_1 ×									100% • 🕞 👘	

Example: User interface with list of the master recipes, list of the control recipe, list of the operation and PFC editor:

#### SWITCHING POSITIONS

The position in the recipe is adapted depending on the recipe and status of the recipe:

• When opening a currently-running recipe:

It is centered on the first active element. The first active element is the one that is at the top. If there are several active elements in the same line, the element that is furthest to the left is selected. Elements with execution positions before or after this are handled the same as the active ones in this case.

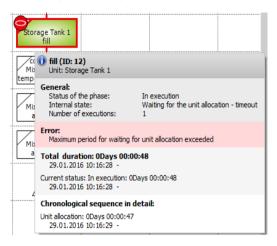
When a recipe is first opened

Centering is on the start of the recipe. In a PFC recipe, centering is on the start element. A matrix recipe is opened in such a way that the upper left corner is visible.



#### TOOL TIP

A tool tip informs you about the current and historical events of an element.



The following is displayed:

- Element name
- General information about status and number of executions.
   Note: The counter becomes active if the phase is reactivated, including if the status is restarting, but the restart condition has not yet been run through.
- ► Error
- ► Total duration including times in status Paused.
- ► Timing

## 8.1.1 Control elements of the recipe editor

The following are available for the editor:

- Toolbars (can be hidden)
- ▶ Tabs (on page 126)
- Dockable windows (on page 127)

#### TOOLBARS

There are independent toolbars available in the Recipe editor for each type of recipe and the different status. For details, see the Matrix recipe toolbars (on page 179) and Toolbars and PFC recipe context menu (on page 144) chapters. All actions of the individual symbols can also be engineered using their own buttons in the screen. If the toolbars are thus not needed, they can be displayed or hidden using the settings in the zenon Editor.



To show/hide toolbars:

- 1. In the zenon Editor, highlight the **Recipe editor** control element in the **Batch Control** screen
- 2. Go to the property group Representation\Show editor control elements.
- 3. Activate or deactivate the Toolbars checkbox.

#### Tabs in the recipe editor

If several recipes are open in the recipe editor, these are represented with tabs. Recipes can be displayed and opened in two groups next to each other or underneath each other. To open a recipe in a new group:

- 1. In the context menu of the recipe, select the **horizontal neighboring group** or **vertical neighboring group** command
- 2. Select the type of display:
  - Move
  - Open in parallel

The control elements are always only applicable to the active recipe of the active group.

- The active group is emphasized in color.
- The active tab is emphasized with bold font. Information on the active tab is shown in the title bar of the editor.
- ▶ Tabs can be moved and arranged by dragging & dropping, including between groups.



#### TAB CONTEXT MENU

Parameter	Description
Save	Saves changes in the recipe.
Close	Closes the recipe.
Close all others	Closes all other open recipes. Only the recipe in which the context menu was activated remains open.
Group horizontally	Opens the recipe in a new group below the other recipes.
	<ul> <li>Move display: The recipe is moved and the upper group is removed.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Move display parallel. The recipe is displayed in parallel in both groups.</li> </ul>
Group vertically	Opens the recipe in a new group to the right of the active group.
	<ul> <li>Move display: The recipe is moved and removed from the left group.</li> </ul>
	Move display parallel. The recipe is displayed in parallel in both groups.

#### **Dockable windows**

In the recipe editor, three windows can be shown, positioned and docked as desired:

- List of master recipes (on page 137)
- List of control recipes (on page 203)
- List of operations (on page 190)

For details on the selection and positioning, see the Selection and positioning (on page 130) chapter.

The settings are saved individually for each computer and user.



Filter text       V       Filter text       V	@Operation name	ň	@Operatio	@Operation description		@Operation s	t	@Release	d on	@Released by	_	
Operation_1       PFC       @Edit mode         Operation_3       Matrix       @Edit mode	Filter text			Filter text	Y	Filter text	$\nabla$	Filter text	Y	Filter text	Y	
Operation_3 Matrix @Edit mode	Operation_2		Matrix			@Edit mode						
Master recipe list	Operation_1		PFC			@Edit mode						
ORecipe editor	Operation_3		Matrix			@Edit mode						
		<b>1</b> @Co	ontrol recipe list	@Operation list			_		_		_	
			ontrol recipe list	Operation list	_							
			ontrol recipe list	The Operation list			_		_			~

#### SHOW/HIDE LIST

The list of dockable windows can be displayed or hidden by means of settings in the zenon Editor.

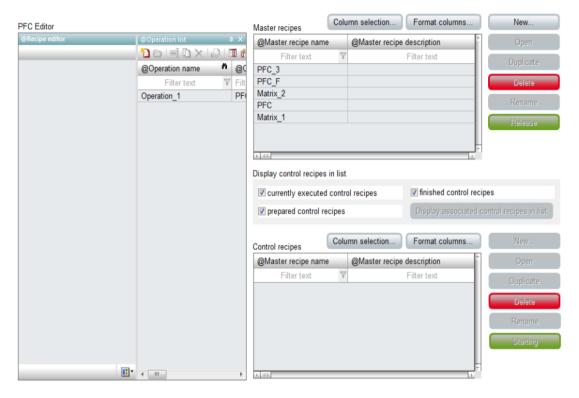
To show/hide the list:

- 1. In the zenon Editor, highlight the Recipe editor comment area in the Batch Control screen
- 2. go to property group Representation\Show editor control elements
- 3. Activate or deactivate the Dockable windows checkbox



#### EXAMPLES

Additional list of the operations shown in the Recipe Editor:



Additional list of master recipes, control recipes and operations shown in the Recipe Editor:

@Master recipe: PF0 (@Released)		@Master recipe list 🛛 📮 🗙	@Control recip 👎	х	@Operation list 🛛 🗜 🗙
🖌 🖉 🔲 🗢 🗋 🏷		🎦 🗁 🖃 🖸 🗙 🛸 🖊	oledxu		' <u>)</u> 🗇 🖃 🗅 🗙 🛛
4 PF0 X M2	Þ	Master recipe name	REE status	RE	Operation name
	^	Filter text	7 Filter text 🛛	F	Filter text
		PF4	@ldle	@	OP1
		MO			
		M2			
		PF0			
Υ	Ε				
TestUnit 2					
Test4					
	_				
III >	Ŧ				
	1.				
↓ ↓ ↓ 100% ▼ ⊖ → ↓ ↓	1-	< >			< 📄 🕨 🕨



@Master recipe: M2	(@Edit mode)			@Master recipe list			џх
🎦 🗔   😍   🗙	🖌 🖾 🗠 🗠			10 🖂 🖬 🗠 🗙 🕫	🍬 🦯 📘	*) 📑 🖳 🔽 🖷 🕒	
4 PF0 M2 ×			Þ	Master recipe name	M	MR Status	
	TestUnit 2	@No	Œ	Filter text	Y	Filter text	$\nabla$
	Slow	Link		PF4		@Edit mode	
				M0		@Released	
				M2		@Edit mode	
				PF0		@Released	
•			•	<			Þ
/ 12 -/- 1	100	)% - ⊖		@Master recipe list	@Control	recipe list   🧾 @Operation	list

#### Lists of master recipes, control recipes and operations shown in the Recipe Editor:

### Selection and positioning

To show and dock the window in the Editor:

- Select the desired window using the drop-down list of the **Selection of dockable windows**
- move the window to the desired position
- Locate this with the positioning aid



The **Selection of dockable windows** is located at the right edge of the status bar of the Editor. Clicking on the symbol opens the list of dockable windows. Selection is carried out by activating/deactivating the checkboxes.

@Operation list									‡×
DOLEDXI	DI	1 🔐							
@Operation name	n		@Operation description	0	Operation s	it	@Released on	@Released by	
Filter text	Y	Filter text 🛛	Filter text 🛛 🖓	7	Filter text	$\nabla$	Filter text 🛛 🖓	Filter text	$\forall$
Operation_2		Matrix		0	Edit mode				
Operation_1		PFC			Edit mode				
Operation_3		Matrix		0	Edit mode				
Chaster recipe list	ec (	ontrol recipe list	Coperation list						
									<b>&gt; &gt;</b>
									~

#### **POSITIONING AIDS**

When moving windows from the Editor interface, positioning aids are displayed. These represent windows or their borders.



This element represents a window area in the Editor.



This element represents the border area of the Editor.

#### **POSITION WINDOW**

To position an element as docked:

- 1. Move the element with the mouse into the desired area
- 2. The positioning aid is displayed



- 3. This represents a window and its areas:
  - a) Center: whole window
  - b) Top: upper half
  - c) Bottom: lower half
  - d) Right: right half
  - e) Left: left half

or the border of the Editor

- 4. Move the mouse to the central positioning aid or to a positioning aid on the border of the editor and from there to the desired area
- 5. The area in the Editor where the element was placed when the mouse button was released is colored in blue
- 6. Move the mouse within the positioning aid to the desired area that is displayed in blue
- 7. Let the mouse button go and the element is placed

If a window is placed on a pre-existing window, both windows are displayed at the same location using tabs.

**Note:** You can read more about positioning in the chapter on the zenon Editor in the User interface/Positioning windows section.

#### 8.1.2 Graphical design

Clicking on the symbol for the graphic design in the tool bar opens the dialog for configuring the colors, grid settings and display of the element ID.

Graphical design ×
Background color
Display grid     Grid color
Display element ID
OK Cancel



Parameters	Description				
Background color	Defines the background color of the diagram. Click on the color in order to open the palette for selecting a color.				
Display grid	<ul> <li>Active: Display the grid</li> <li>Inactive: Grid is hidden.</li> <li>Can only be configured for PFC recipes.</li> </ul>				
Grid color	Defines the line color of the grid. Click on the color in order to open the palette for selecting a color.				
Display element ID	Inactive: No element ID is shown in the recipe. Note: This setting is recommended for normal operation. Active: The ID of the elements is displayed in the recipe. The exception is lines. The display is in the upper left-hand corner of the element. Note: This setting is recommended for troubleshooting.				
ок	Applies all settings and closes the dialog.				
Cancel	Discards all changes and closes the dialog.				

## 8.1.3 Status line

The status line is automatically adapted to each recipe that contains the focus and initialized with its data. The status line the following is displayed:

- Mode of the recipe
  - Edit mode
  - Manual mode
  - Semi-automatic mode
  - Automatic mode
- Status of the recipe:
  - Ready for start
  - Error: Currently there is an error in the recipe. The number of errors is also displayed.
  - Historical error: During the execution at least one error occurred. Currently not error exists.
  - No error: Until now the execution runs faultless.
- Current execution status (on page 221).
- Mouse cursor position and changes such as moving the connection line
- Approval of a recipe



- Finished without errors
- > Zoom level of the current view; this can also be controlled here

The global statuses of the main recipe are also displayed when executing operations.

## 8.1.4 Touch operation

You can do the following to simplify touch operation in Runtime:

- Optimize the operability of the active elements
- Display some symbols in matrix recipes as control elements (on page 179)
- ► Assign control strategies (on page 200) using control elements of a phase

#### **OPTIMIZE ACTIVE ELEMENT FOR TOUCH**

In order to optimize the operability of the active elements in a recipe that is running, you can activate the **Touch execution positions** property in the editor. You can find these in the properties of the recipe in the **Representation/Multi-Touch** nodes.

If the option is active, semi-transparent circles are placed behind the active elements in the recipe editor; the active contact areas are enlarged as a result.

## 8.2 Engineering rules for recipes

At the engineering the rules defined in standard ANSI/ISA-S88 are generally true.

Important principles:

#### GENERAL

- For all elements all connection points must be connected.
   Exception: Jump targets. Only two of the three input connection points need to be linked there.
- The **begin element** is always present only once with PFC recipes and marks the beginning of the process. It is not visible with matrix recipes.
- The end element is always present only once with PFC recipes and marks the end of the process. It is not visible with matrix recipes.
- > Phases can be inserted anywhere. You can also place several phases in succession.
- At least one active phase should be present in the recipe.



#### TRANSITIONS

- Transitions only exist in PFC recipes.
- Two transitions may not lie one after the other.

#### BRANCHES

- Branches only exist in PFC recipes.
- The first element after a **Begin branch** must be a transition.
- The individual branches which start at Begin branch must all end in an End branch never in an End parallel branch. Any element can be placed between begin and end of a branch even parallel branches as long as they are closed before the End branch element. An end branch can be replaced with jump targets at any point, including within a parallel branch.
- It is not necessary to have an End branch for each Begin branch. You can, for example, have two
   Begin branch elements ending in one End branch, or the other way round.
- It is not necessary to have an End branch for a Begin branch. If for example you have a Begin branch element with two paths and one of the paths ends in a jump target, it does not make sense to have an End branch.

#### **PARALLEL BRANCHES**

- Each parallel branch must contain at least one phase.
- The first element after a **Begin parallel branch** must not be a transition.
- The individual branches that start at a Begin parallel branch must all end in one End parallel branch, but must never end in an End branch. You may use any elements between Begin parallel branch and End parallel branch even branches as long as they are closed before the End parallel branch.
- Not all branches which were started in a Begin parallel branch must end in an End parallel branch. It is enough when all branches converge over an End parallel objects. Equally branches from different Begin parallel branch objects may converge in a single End parallel branch.
- parallel branches allows embedding of additional parallel branches.
   In doing so: each embedded parallel branch must recombine with the superordinate parallel branch

#### LINES IN THE PFC EDITOR

- Lines may be used as connections between any objects. It is allowed to add any number of lines after another.
- Lines must not be used to connect two equal connection points.
   For example: The both inputs of two phases must not be connected directly with a line. In the



engineering this connection is allowed. It is however displayed in red (error) and in the validation (on page 208) an error message is displayed.

#### JUMP TARGETS

- ▶ Jump targets only exist in PFC recipes.
- > Jump targets correspond to an **end branch**. They are intended to
  - jump between branches,
  - jump out of branches,
  - engineer loops

For this, the following applies: A path which ends in a jump target must have started with a **Begin branch**. Otherwise the end is not reached.

- ► Jump targets consist of tree inputs and one output. At least two inputs and the output must always be connected. At this it makes no difference which input connection point is connected.
- Jump targets can be switched consecutively if at least two input connection points are allocated.
- Jumps are prohibited:
  - between parallel branches
  - to jump out of a parallel branch
  - to jump in a parallel branch.

#### CONFIGURATION OF OBJECTS

#### REACTIONS

- Reactions can appear in each object state.
- ► For each reaction type several reactions are possible. They are sorted at the triggering and are executed in accordance to their priority. At this 1 is the highest priority.
- All variables of all parameters are signed in to the driver for reading. If a value is needed at a reaction but is not yet available or invalid, the alternate value is written. The writing of the value is done without write confirmation.
- ► Some of the reactions are triggered only once in the process e.g. time outs. If the phase is restarted, these reactions are also retriggered if necessary.

## 8.3 Recipe types

Batch Control distinguishes between the two following recipe types:



- ▶ PFC recipes: For free, complex processes. These are created with the PFC editor (on page 143).
- Matrix recipes: For simple, sequential, parallel processes. They are created with the matrix editor (on page 178).

The following type of recipes are available:

- Master recipes (on page 137): Form the basis for the control recipes. They are created in status Editable. If they are in status Released, they can no longer be modified.
- Operations (on page 190): Form a substructure that can be embedded in recipes. This can provide a better overview in complex recipes. Operation templates are created in a similar way to master recipes. Operation instances can be inserted into master recipes.
- Control recipes (on page 203):

Are recipes which can be executed once. Each control recipe is based on a master recipe. The arrangement of the elements cannot be changed in control recipes. It is defined by the master recipe. Changeable are only command tags for which option **Changeable in control recipe** was activated.

Recipes are created and edited in Runtime. If a screen that contains recipes that have not been saved is closed, the user is asked if the recipes are to be saved. If there is no input from the user within 15 seconds, the unsaved changes are discarded and the screen is closed.

## 8.4 Master recipes

Master recipe are the basis of control recipes. The recipe process is defined and tested with the help of master recipes. After a master recipe is released, its content and structure can no longer be changed.

For the creation of master recipes two editors are available:

- Matrix editor
- ▶ PFC editor

Depending on the license, either just the matrix editor or both editors are available.



## 8.4.1 Create master recipe

A click on the **Create master recipe** button opens the **Master recipe configuration** dialog.

onfiguration master recipe		X
<ul> <li>Matrix recipe</li> <li>PFC recipe</li> <li>Name</li> </ul>	$\searrow$	
New master recipe		
Description		
		<u>^</u>
4		<del></del>
	ОК	Cancel

Parameter	Description				
Matrix recipe (on page	Activate this radio button if you want to create a matrix recipe (on page 178).				
178)	Note: Only possible if the corresponding license is available.				
PFC recipe (on page	Activate this radio button if you want to create a PFC recipe (on page 142).				
142)	Note: Only possible if the corresponding license is available.				
Name	Unique name for the recipe. The name must not contain a dot (.), a question mark (?), a @ or an asterisk (*).				
	Maximum length: 256 characters.				
	Note: When you copy a recipe the existing name is complemented with the prefix " <b>Copy of</b> ". If the maximum length is exceeded by this, the name is shortened to the allowed length starting from the last character.				
	The uniqueness is checked in the entire network. Therefore it can happen that you cannot take over the name as another user on another computer in the zenon network already has used the same name and you do not see the recipe in the list of the master recipes yet.				
	The recipe names can be changed later but only as long as the recipe is in status Editable.				
Description	Optional description for the recipe that is to be created.				
	You can change the description later, but only as long as the recipe is in editable status. To change the description, select the <b>Rename master recipe</b> symbol.				
ок	Applies all settings and created a new recipe.				
Cancel	Closes the dialog without creating a recipe.				



# 8.4.2 Toolbar and context menu for master recipe list view

#### TOOLBAR

1 🗅 🗁 📜 🛋 🕨 🗶 👒 🖉 😓 1 🖏 🕾 🛯 🖓 👘 😫 1 💷 🔗 🗉



Symbol	Description
New master recipe	Opens the dialog for creating a new master recipe.
Open master recipe in Editor	Opens the selected recipe in the recipe editor.
Create new version	Creates a new version (on page 187) of the selected master recipe. This must be approved or marked as obsolete.
Rename master recipe	Opens dialog to rename the selected recipe.
Duplicate master recipe	Creates a copy of the selected recipe and opens the dialog to rename the duplicate.
Delete master recipe	Deletes selected recipes.
Export selected as XML	Exports the selected master recipe as an XML file.
Import XML	Imports the selected XML file as master recipe(s).
Switch master recipe to test mode	Switches selected recipe to test mode after requesting confirmation.
Switch master recipe to edit mode	Switches selected recipe to edit mode after requesting confirmation.
Release master recipe	Approves selected recipe after requesting confirmation.
New control recipe	Opens the dialog for creating a new control recipe.
Include running control recipes in the display	Includes running control recipes in the display.
Include prepared control recipes in the display	Includes prepared control recipes in the display.
Include finished control recipes in the display	Includes finished control recipes in the display.
Include outdated control recipes in the display	Includes outdated control recipes in the display.
Display list of attendant control recipes in control recipe list	Shows all control recipes for the selected approved control recipes.
Column selection	Opens the dialog for selecting the columns which should be displayed.
Column format	Opens the dialog for configuring the column formats.

CONTEXT MENU



Command	Description
New master recipe	Opens the dialog for creating a new master recipe.
Open in Recipe Editor	Opens the selected recipe in the recipe editor.
Rename	Opens dialog to rename the selected recipe.
Duplicate	Creates a copy of the selected recipe and opens the dialog to rename the duplicate.
Delete	Deletes selected recipes.
Export selected as XML	Exports the selected master recipe as an XML file.
Import XML	Imports the selected XML file as master recipe(s).
Switch to edit mode	Switches selected recipe to edit mode after requesting confirmation.
Switch to test mode	Switches selected recipe to test mode after requesting confirmation.
Release	Approves selected recipe after requesting confirmation.
Highlight as outdated	Marks the selected recipe as outdated.
New control recipe	Opens the dialog for creating a new control recipe.
Display associated control recipes in list	Shows all control recipes that belong to selected approved master recipes.



## 8.4.3 PFC recipe

If you selected PFC recipe in the **master recipe configuration** dialog and exited the dialog with OK, the newly-created recipe opens on a new tab in the PFC editor (on page 143).

 	$\bigtriangledown$		

As each recipe needs a begin and an end element, these two elements already exist in the recipe and cannot be deleted from it.

Add the desired phases, transitions, branches, parallel branches and unit allocations to your recipe. Fields which are unsuitable for adding an element turn red when you move the element above it.



#### **PFC editor**

In the PFC editor you can create your recipes graphically.

Master recipe: Master (v1) (Edit mode) 🎦 🖵   🌫   🔀   🛩   🖌					
Master (v1) ×					Þ
		¥			
					1
<					
/ 「	F3	/-	1 eleme 100	9% ▼ ⊖ ▼ □	÷

#### **TECHNICAL DETAILS**

- Sheet size:
  - Default: 11 x 11 cells
  - Minimum: 5 x 5 cells
  - Maximum: 500 x 1000 cells
- Cell size
  - Default: 155 x 111 pixels
- Outside edge: 100 pixel
- Grid: is displayed by default; can also be hidden
- Scroll bar: Is displayed if the document is larger than the frame.
- Scrolling with a mouse wheel: up and down or, if you press and hold the Shift key, left and right.
- Zooming: Ctrl key + scroll wheel
- ► Selecting elements: left mouse click
- ▶ Multiple selection: Ctrl key + mouse click
- Move symbol: Click element and move it over the diagram while holding the left mouse button pressed. Content can be dropped to cells with green background. If a cell turns red when you move over it, you cannot drop the content.



## Toolbar and context menu PFC recipe

#### TOOLBAR PFC EDITOR: EDIT MODE

🎦 🗟 💿 🔀 🖌 🖉 🖗 💊 🗘 후 속 두 두 두 구 🔽 📀 👒 🔕 👘



Parameter	Description
New master recipe	Opens the dialog for creating a new master recipe.
Save master recipe	Saves the master recipe which is open for editing.
Graphical design	Opens the dialog (on page 132) to configure background colors, grid, and display of element ID.
Delete	Deletes the selected elements from the diagram.
	Multiple selection via Ctrl + mouse click keyboard shortcut.
Check recipe for errors	Checks recipe for errors and displays found errors in an information window. For several errors the first errors are displayed.
	The error message contains the error number, the ID of the element, its location and a message in plain text.
Edit element	Opens the corresponding dialog for editing the selected element.
Replace phase/operation	Opens dialog to select a phase or an operation and replaces the existing phase with the newly-selected one or the existing operation with a newly-selected one. Several phases or operations can be selected and replaced together.
	Shortcut: Shift+double click
Edit mode	Toggles between insert mode and edit mode.
Insert phase	Adds a phase.
Insert transition	Adds a transition.
Insert Begin parallel branch	Adds the start of a parallel branch.
Insert End parallel branch	Adds an end of a parallel branch.
Insert Begin branch	Adds a begin branch.
Insert End branch	Adds an end branch.
Insert unit allocation	Adds a unit allocation.



Insert jump target	Adds a jump target.
Insert operation	Adds an operation (on page 190).
Switch recipe to test mode	Switches recipe to the test mode. For this the recipe must be without errors.
Release recipe	Releases the recipe. With this a control recipe can be created.

**Note:** Insertions remain active until you change to the edit mode using the **Edit mode** symbol, the Esckey or you change to another insert option via a symbol for adding a new element.

### TOOLBAR PFC RECIPE TEST MODE

) I N 🖻 🖸 V I 🖩 🗙 I M R G R G I 🗸 I 🖌 👁 🖳 🥾 🍐 🐄 🖏 🖌 🖊 👃 👘



Parameter	Description
Start recipe	Starts the recipe process.
Recipe pausing	Pauses the recipe.
Resume recipe	Resumes paused recipe.
Hold recipe	Holds recipe.
Restart recipe	Restarts held recipe.
Recipe stopping	Stops the recipe.
Abort recipe	Aborts the recipe process.
Phase pausing	Pauses the selected phase.
Resume phase	Resumes the process of a selected paused phase.
Hold phase	Holds the selected phase.
Restart phase	Restarts the selected held phase.
Escape phase	Starts process to exit from the phase.
Check recipe for errors	Starts recipe validation (on page 208).
Edit element	Opens the corresponding dialog for editing the selected element.
Graphical design	Opens the dialog (on page 132) to configure background colors, grid, and display of element ID.
Switch to automatic mode	Switches process to automatic mode.
Switch to semi-automatic mode	Switches process to semi-automatic mode.
Switch to manual mode	Switches process to manual mode.
Continue recipe only at selected execution position	Continues a recipe at the selected position.
Continue recipe at all execution positions	Continues a recipe on every available position.
Skip active condition	Skips a pending condition of the selected phase.
	Only possible in the manual mode.
Edit mode	Switches from test mode to edit mode.



Release recipe	Releases the recipe. With this a control recipe can be created.

#### **PFC RECIPE TOOLBAR: APPROVED**

#### 🧹 🔊 🗋 🎦

Parameter	Description
Check recipe for errors	Checks recipe for errors and displays found errors in an information window. For several errors the first errors are displayed.
	The error message contains the error number, the ID of the element, its location and a message in plain text.
Edit element	Opens the corresponding dialog for editing the selected element.
	The dialog is opened in write-protected mode, because it is no longer possible to edit approved recipes.
Graphical design	Opens the dialog (on page 132) to configure background colors, grid, and display of element ID.
Duplicate recipe	Created a copy of the recipe. The dialog for the input of a unique name and the description is opened.
Create control recipe	Creates a control recipe on the basis of the approved master recipe.

# Information

The functions of the individual symbols can also be configured using buttons and thus be made touch-operable. Toolbars can therefore also be hidden (on page 125).

#### **Begin element**

First element in the process. It is automatically created in the editor when a recipe is created and it cannot be deleted.

#### Add and configure phase

To add a phase:

- 1. In the toolbar select the symbol for Insert phase
- 2. Move the mouse to the desired position.



3. Place the phase.

the dialog for selecting a phase (on page 151) is opened

4. Select the desired phase.

To configure a phase:

- 1. Double click the phase
- The dialog for configuration is opened If an element has not yet been assigned a phase, double-clicking opens the dialog to select a phase.

Note: The shift key plus a double click always opens the dialog to select a phase.

### CONFIGURATION

Edit phase	×
Phase active in this step	
Name	
Flush	
Description	
	0
Unit	
Mixing Tank	
control strategy	
<no control="" linked="" strategy=""></no>	$\sim$
Description of control strategy	
	0
General Parameter	
Waiting period unit allocation	
Interlocking condition Waiting period input interlocking	
OD 00:00:00 = 5	
	-
Phase done condition         Maximum execution duration           (X01.Value = 2)          0D 00:00:00         = 52	
Minimum execution duration	
0D 00:00:00 = 🔄 🗌 Changeable in the control recipe	
	-
Waiting period following condition OD 00:00:00 = 5	
OK Cance	el



Parameter	Description
Phase active in this step	Active: Phase is active in this step
Name	Name of the phase. Display only.
Description	Comment about the phase. Display only.
Unit	Unit on which the phase is carried out. Only display.
Control strategy	Selection of a control strategy (on page 200) from a drop-down list.
	Only available if control strategies have been configured (on page 44) for this phase.
	Default: no Control strategy linked
Description of control strategy	Description of the selected control strategy.
	Display of the description entered in the Editor only.
General	Tab for configuration of general properties.
Parameter	Tab for configuration of parameters.
ОК	Applies all changes on all tabs and closes the dialog.
Cancel	Discards all changes on all tabs and closes the dialog.

Configuration of the tabs see chapter:

- General: (on page 151) Display and configuration of the settings for the phase
- ▶ Parameter (on page 156): Configuration of the tags

The entry of a reason can be requested in order to make changes. To do this, either the **Reason for value** change necessary property must be activated in the **Edit tag** node for the module in general, or the **Reason for value** change necessary property in the **General** group for individual functions.

### RULES FOR EDITING A PHASE

A phase can be edited:

- ► In a master recipe in edit mode: If the user has sufficient rights.
- ▶ In a master recipe in test mode: If the user has sufficient rights and the phase is not active.
- ► In a control recipe with prepared status: If the user has sufficient rights and the Changeable in the control recipe option has been activated.
- ▶ In a control recipe with running status: If the user has sufficient rights, the Changeable in the control recipe option has been activated and the phase is not active.

The phase can no longer be edited in pre-configured control recipes and in approved master recipes.



### Selection phase

If a phase is added, the dialog for selecting a phase is opened.

- 🛃 Workspace	Name #	Destruction	1.1.1	Market and the second
BATCH_E		Description		Waiting period input inte
	Filter text	Filter text 🛛 🖓	Filter 🝸	Filter text
	Filling	Filling the reactor with t	X01.00	0T 00:00:10
	Stirring	Turns the stirrer on and		0T 00:00:00
	Heating	Heats up the reactor qui	X01.00	0T 00:00:10
	Heating	Heats up the reactor	X01.00	0T 00:00:10
	Stirring	Turns the stirrer on and		0T 00:00:00
	Filling	Filling the reactor with t	X01.00	0T 00:00:10

Option	Description
Project tree	Displays the current project from which the phases can be selected.
List of phases	In the list all phases engineered in the Editor are displayed.
	The list can be filtered. The filtering is case-sensitive. Placeholders * and <b>?</b> can be used.
Cursor keys	Move the selection up or down.
No selection	Deletes already selected phases from the element.
ок	Applies settings and closes the dialog.
Cancel	Discards all changes and closes the dialog.

All settings of the dialog are saved user-specifically when the dialog is closed.

#### General

The properties of tab **General** are set in the Editor with the exception of **Changeable in the control recipe**. The values can changed in the master recipe. A symbol indicates whether the value in the dialog matches the value in the Editor. For different values you can again apply the value defined in the Editor.



### Meaning of the symbols next to the values:

Symbol	Description
=	Value in the dialog and the value in the Editor match.
Equals sign	
$\diamond$	Value in the dialog and the value in the Editor do not match.
Angle brackets	
Arrows in opposite direction	Only active if the values in the recipe and Editor do not match. Click on button to apply the value from the Editor. It overrides the value in the master recipe.

### EDIT PHASE

Edit phase	×
✓ Phase active in this step	
Name	
Flush	
Description	~
	0
Unit	
Mixing Tank	
control strategy	
<no control="" linked="" strategy=""></no>	
Description of control strategy	
	$\sim$
	~
General Parameter	
Waiting period unit allocation	
0D 00:00:00 = 5	
Interlocking condition Waiting period input interlocking	
0D 00:00:00 = 5	
Phase done condition Maximum execution duration	_
(X01.Value = 2) 0D 00:00:00 = 5	
Minimum execution duration	
0D 00:00:00 = 🔄 🗌 Changeable in the control recipe	
	-
Waiting period following condition	
OK Cance	<b>.</b>

For information on configuration of the basic data on these tabs, see the Add and configure phases (on page 148) chapter.



Option	Description
Waiting period unit allocation	Time in days, hours, minutes and seconds which is waited for the allocation of the unit. The waiting period can be changed in the Runtime as long as the recipe has status Editable.
	After the defined period has exceeded, the event Waiting period unit allocation exceeded is triggered and the element is highlighted. Additional actions must be defined by the engineer. If no further actions take place, the waiting is continued.
	Maximum: 9999T 23:59:59 Default: 0d 00:00:00
	Note: A unit can only be allocated by a single recipe with status In execution at a time.
	Value is predefined in the Editor and can be changed here as long as the recipe is not released.
Input lock	Defines entry interlocking. Click on button to open the formula editor (on page 258) for defining the condition. If an input interlocking is configured, the phase is only executed in the Runtime when the condition for the input interlocking is fulfilled. The formula can consist of one or more command tags and return tags of the phase. Value and status of the variables can be used. The formula returns TRUE or FALSE as result. The condition can be displayed in the Runtime but cannot be changed there. The waiting period for the input interlocking is configured with the help of property <b>Waiting period input interlocking</b> .
Waiting period input interlocking	Time period in days, hours, minutes and seconds in which the condition defined in property <b>Input interlocking</b> must return value TRUE. The waiting period begins with the checking of the entry interlocking. If the condition is not fulfilled with the waiting period, the event Waiting period entry interlocking exceeded is triggered and the waiting continues. If no reaction was defined on the event which forces another behavior, it is waited until the condition is fulfilled.
	If Od 00:00:00 is defined as waiting period, the event is not triggered.
	Minimum value: 0d 00:00:00
	Maximum value: 9999d 23:59:59
	Default: 0d 00:00:00
	Value is predefined in the Editor and can be changed here as long as the recipe is not released.
Phase done condition	Defines phase done condition. Click on button to open the formula editor (on page 258) for defining the condition.



	The condition can be displayed in the Runtime but cannot be changed there. The period which is waited for the fulfillment of the condition is defined via property <b>Maximum execution duration</b> .
Maximum execution duration	Time period in days, hours, minutes and seconds in which the condition defined in property <b>Phase done condition</b> must return value TRUE. The waiting period begins with the writing of the command tag. If the condition is not fulfilled within the waiting period, the event Maximum execution period exceeded is triggered and the waiting is continued. If no reaction was defined on the event which forces another behavior, it is waited until the condition is fulfilled.
	<b>Note:</b> Time keeps running when the recipe/the phase is paused.
	If Od 00:00:00 is defined as waiting period, the event is not triggered.
	Minimum value: 0d 00:00:00
	Maximum value: 9999d 23:59:59
	Default: 0d 00:00:00
	Value is predefined in the Editor and can be changed here as long as the recipe is not released.
	Makes only sense if property Phase done condition was configured.
	Read more about execution duration in chapter Execution duration (on page 30).
Minimum execution duration	Minimum execution duration of the phase.
	>0: Period which is at least waited after the writing of the command tag regardless of whether the phase done condition is fulfilled.
	• 0: No minimum execution duration defined.
	<b>Note:</b> Minimum execution duration can exceed <b>Maximum</b> <b>execution duration</b> .Value is predefined in the Editor and can be changed here as long as the recipe is not released.
	Changeable in the control recipe if option <b>Changeable in the control recipe</b> was activated in the master recipe.
	Read more about execution duration in chapter Execution duration (on page 30).
Changeable in the control recipe	Active: Property can be changed in the control recipe.
Waiting period following condition	Period in days, hours, minutes and seconds in which the phase must be deactivated. The waiting period begins when the phase done condition is reached. If the condition is not



	fulfilled within the waiting period, the event Waiting period following condition exceeded is triggered and the waiting is continued. If no reaction was defined on the event which forces another behavior, it is waited until the condition is fulfilled.
	If $0d \ 00:00:00$ is defined as waiting period, the event is not triggered.
	Minimum value: 0d 00:00:00
	Maximum value: 9999d 23:59:59
	Default: 0d 00:00:00
	<b>Note:</b> If the following condition exists depends on the recipe structure. Therefore the configuration of a waiting period should not be done in the Editor but in the Runtime.Value is predefined in the Editor and can be changed here as long as the recipe is not released.
	For more information see chapters <b>Times</b> (on page 34) and <b>Following conditions</b> (on page 231).
ок	Applies all changes on all tabs and closes the dialog.
Cancel	Discards all changes on all tabs and closes the dialog.



### Parameter

Mixing Tank	Edit phase			×
Name Description Unit Mixing Tank control strategy <no ceneral="" control="" description="" filt="" filter="" parameter="" secription="" strategy="" t<="" td="" text=""><td>Phase active in this ste</td><td>2</td><td></td><td></td></no>	Phase active in this ste	2		
		Þ		
Description       Unit       Mixing Tank       control strategy <no control="" linked="" strategy="">       Description of control strategy       General       Parameter       Image: Second Second</no>				
Unit       Mixing Tank       control strategy <no control="" linked="" strategy="">       Description of control strategy       General       Parameter       Image: Second Strategy       Name       Description       Filter text       Total Filter text</no>				
Unit Mixing Tank control strategy No control strategy linked> Description of control strategy   General Parameter   Parameter Image: Control strategy   Name Description   Riter text Image: Control strategy	Description			
Mixing Tank       control strategy <no control="" linked="" strategy="">       Description of control strategy       Image: Control strategy       Image:</no>				
Control strategy <no control="" linked="" strategy="">       Description of control strategy       Image: Control s</no>	Unit			
Ave control strategy                    General           Parameter                Parameter                 Name                 Filter text           Filter text	Mixing Tank			
Ceneral Parameter          Image: Control strategy         Image: Control strategy </td <td>control strategy</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>	control strategy			
General Parameter       Image: Second se	<no control="" links<="" strategy="" td=""><td>ed&gt;</td><td></td><td><math>\sim</math></td></no>	ed>		$\sim$
General Parameter           Image: Second state           Image: Second state           Name         Description           Filter text         Image: Second state           Filter text         Image: Second state	Description of control strat	tegy		
General     Parameter       Image: Second sec				
Part     Pescription       Name     Description       Filter text     V       Filter text     V				~
Name     Description       Filter text     Image: Comparison of the second sec				
Filter text     V     Filt	1 🖧 🖧 🔳 🔐			
<				
	Filter text	Y	Filter text	T Filt
				,
OK Cancel				
			OK	Cancel

Parameter	Description
List of tags	Displays the tag configured in the Editor. Tags can be filtered and sorted according to columns.
	Click on the <b>Edit tag</b> symbol, double-click the tag, menu item in the context menu or press the Enter key to open the dialog (on page 157) to edit a tag.
ок	Applies all changes on all tabs and closes the dialog.
Cancel	Discards all changes on all tabs and closes the dialog.

## TOOLBAR

<sup>1</sup> 20 20 10 10
 <sup>1</sup>



Symbol	Meaning
Edit tag	Opens the dialog (on page 157) for editing the tag.
Display all command tags	Toggles between the display of the changeable tags and all tags.
Display return tags	In addition to the command tags also displays the return tags or hides them.
Column selection	Opens the dialog (on page 167) for selecting the columns which should be displayed.
Column format	Opens dialog (on page 169) to format the columns.

### Edit tag

To edit a tag in the Runtime:

- 1. In dialog Edit phase select the tab Tag.
- 2. Highlight the desired tag
- 3. Open the dialog to edit the tag by clicking on the **Edit tag** symbol, the context menu, double-clicking on the tag or pressing the Enter key.

The dialog for editing is opened.

For each data type an own dialog is opened:

- Numerical
- Binary
- String
- Time period

The properties are normally configured in the Editor (on page 24) and only displayed in the Runtime. Numerical tags and tags for time duration are excluded. These can be amended in Runtime if the **Parameter value can be changed in master recipe** property has been activated in the Editor (on page 24).



#### NUMERIC TAGS

Change tag properties	×
Parameter	
Fill in water	
Description	
	-
Type Data type	
Command Numeric	
Changeable in the control recipe	
Minimum Minimum variable	
30 =	
Value Unit	
50 = 🖘 liter	
Maximum Maximum variable	
Variable Data type variable	
Menge Wasser UINT	
Driver Driver name	
Intern Driver for internal variables	
Accept OK	Cancel



Parameter	Meaning
Parameter	Name of the TAG. Display only.
Description	Free description of the tag. Display only.
Туре	Type of the tag: Initial, value or return. Display only.
Data Type	Data type of the tag. Display only.
Changeable in the control recipe	Active: Value of the property can be changed in the control recipe.
	Only available if:
	The parameter is an initial or value parameter
	it was configured in the Editor that the tag can be changed in the Batch recipe (property: Parameter value can be changed in master recipe).
Minimum	Minimum value for the tag.
	Default from the Editor can be changed when the IsEditableLimitsInRecipeLocal property was activated in the Editor (on page 24). If the value is changed, it is marked with the symbol (on page 151) on the right side of the value. Changed values can be overwritten with the default from the Editor with the help of the button right next to it. For control strategies, synchronization takes place with the values that were set in the control strategy when linking parameters.
Minimum variable	Allowed minimum value of the variable.
Value	Value of the tag.
	Default from the Editor can be changed when the <b>Parameter</b> value can be changed in master recipe property was activated in the Editor (on page 24). If the value is changed, it is marked with the symbol (on page 151) on the right side of the value. Changed values can be overwritten with the default from the Editor with the help of the button right next to it. For control strategies, synchronization takes place with the values that were set in the control strategy when linking parameters.
Unit	Unit of the value.
Maximum	Maximum value for the tag. Display only. Default from the Editor can be changed when the <b>IsEditableLimitsInRecipeLocal</b> property was activated in the Editor (on page 24). If the value is changed, it is marked with the symbol (on page 151) on the right side of the value. Changed values can be overwritten with the default from the Editor with the help of



	synchronization takes place with the values that were set in the control strategy when linking parameters.
Maximum variable	Allowed maximum value of the variable. Display only.
Variable	Variable which is linked to the tag. Display only.
Data type variable	Data type of the variable. Display only.
Drivers	Driver of the variable. Display only.
Driver name	Description of the driver of the variable. Display only.
Arrow keys	Navigating through the tags.
	They are displayed in the order of the list. At this only tags are displayed which are visible with the current filter and grouping.
	If changes were done, there is a prompt before you can change to another tag whether the changes should be applied or discarded. If changes should be applied, the input is checked before advancing.
Apply	Applies all changes if the check of the changes was successful. The dialog remains open for further editing.
ОК	Applies all changes and closes the dialog if the check of the changes was successful.
Cancel	Discards all changes which have not been taken over yet and closes the dialog.

## **BINARY TAG**

Fill in carbon dioxide	hange tag properties	×
Description  Type Data type Command Binary  Changeable in the control recipe  Changeable in the control reci	Parameter	
Type       Data type         Command       Binary         Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe         Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe         Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe         Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe         Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe         Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe         Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe         Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe         Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe         Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe         Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe         Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe         Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe         Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe         Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control	Fill in carbon dioxide	
Type Data type Command Binary Changeable in the control recipe S  Changeable in the control recipe S  Off =  Command S	Description	
Command     Binary       Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe		*
Command     Binary       Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe		-
Command     Binary       Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe     Image: Changeable in the control recipe       Image: Changeable in the control recipe	Type	Data type
Off =      S     Off =      S     On     Toggle  Variable Data type variable BOOL Driver name Driver for internal variables		
Off =      S     Off =      S     On     Toggle  Variable Data type variable BOOL Driver name Driver for internal variables	Changeable in the control recip	De la
Off =      S     On     On     Toggle  Variable Kohlensäure zufüllen Driver Intern Driver for internal variables		N
On     Toggle       Variable     Data type variable       Kohlensäure zufüllen     BOOL       Driver     Driver name       Intern     Driver for internal variables		~1
© Toggle Variable Data type variable Kohlensäure zufüllen BOOL Driver name Intern Driver for internal variables		
Variable Data type variable Kohlensäure zufüllen BOOL Driver Driver name Intern Driver for internal variables	On On	
Kohlensäure zufüllen     BOOL       Driver     Driver name       Intern     Driver for internal variables	Toggle	
Kohlensäure zufüllen     BOOL       Driver     Driver name       Intern     Driver for internal variables		
Kohlensäure zufüllen     BOOL       Driver     Driver name       Intern     Driver for internal variables		
Kohlensäure zufüllen     BOOL       Driver     Driver name       Intern     Driver for internal variables		
Kohlensäure zufüllen     BOOL       Driver     Driver name       Intern     Driver for internal variables	Variable	Data type variable
Intern Driver for internal variables	Kohlensäure zufüllen	
	Driver	
Accept OK Cancel	Intern	Driver for internal variables
Accept OK Cancel		
	• •	Accept OK Cancel



Parameter	Meaning
Parameter	Name of the TAG. Display only.
Description	Free description of the tag. Display only.
Туре	Type of the tag: Initial, value or return. Display only.
Data Type	Data type of the tag. Display only.
Changeable in the control recipe	Active: Value of the property can be changed in the control recipe.
	Only available if:
	The parameter is an initial or value parameter
	it was configured in the Editor that the tag can be changed in the Batch recipe (property: Parameter value can be changed in master recipe).
Off	Status: Off.
	Default from the Editor can be changed when the <b>Parameter</b> value can be changed in master recipe property was activated in the Editor (on page 24). If the value is changed, it is marked with the symbol (on page 151) on the right side of the value. Changed values can be overwritten with the default from the Editor with the help of the button right next to it. For control strategies, synchronization takes place with the values that were set in the control strategy when linking parameters.
On	Status: On.
Toggle	Toggles between the states.
Variable	Variable which is linked to the tag. Display only.
Data type variable	Data type of the variable. Display only.
Drivers	Driver of the variable. Display only.
Driver name	Description of the driver of the variable. Display only.
Arrow keys	Navigating through the tags.
	They are displayed in the order of the list. At this only tags are displayed which are visible with the current filter and grouping.
	If changes were done, there is a prompt before you can change to another tag whether the changes should be applied or discarded. If changes should be applied, the input is checked before advancing.
Арріу	Applies all changes if the check of the changes was successful. The dialog remains open for further editing.
ок	Applies all changes and closes the dialog if the check of the changes was successful.



Cancel	Discards all changes which have not been taken over yet and
	closes the dialog.

### STRING TAG

Change tag properties	<b>—</b> ×
Parameter Beverage name Description	<b>b</b>
Туре	Data type
Command	String
Changeable in the control recipe	
String Name String length 30	* *
Variable Getränkename Driver Intern	Data type variable STRING Driver name Driver for internal variables
	Accept OK Cancel



Parameter	Meaning
Parameter	Name of the TAG. Display only.
Description	Free description of the tag. Display only.
Туре	Type of the tag: Initial, value or return. Display only.
Data Type	Data type of the tag. Display only.
Changeable in the control recipe	Active: Value of the property can be changed in the control recipe.
	Only available if:
	The parameter is an initial or value parameter
	it was configured in the Editor that the tag can be changed in the Batch recipe (property: Parameter value can be changed in master recipe).
String	Alphanumeric character string.
	<ul> <li>Default from the Editor can be changed when the <b>Parameter</b> value can be changed in master recipe property was activated in the Editor (on page 24).</li> <li>If the value is changed, it is marked with the symbol (on page 151) on the right side of the value. Changed values can be overwritten with the default from the Editor with the help of the button right next to it. For control strategies, synchronization takes place with the values that were set in the control strategy when linking parameters.</li> <li>Possible length is limited by the String length engineered in</li> </ul>
String length	the variable.
Variable	Defines possible length of the string. Display only.
Data type variable	Variable which is linked to the tag. Display only.
Drivers	Data type of the variable. Display only.
Driver name	Driver of the variable. Display only.
	Description of the driver of the variable. Display only.
Arrow keys	Navigating through the tags. They are displayed in the order of the list. At this only tags are displayed which are visible with the current filter and grouping. If changes were done, there is a prompt before you can change
	to another tag whether the changes should be applied or discarded. If changes should be applied, the input is checked before advancing.
Apply	Applies all changes if the check of the changes was successful. The dialog remains open for further editing.



ок	Applies all changes and closes the dialog if the check of the changes was successful.
Cancel	Discards all changes which have not been taken over yet and closes the dialog.

### TIME PERIOD

Change tag properties		×
Parameter		
Heating duration		
Description	2	*
Туре	Data type	Ŧ
Command	Duration	
Changeable in the control recipe		
Minimum OT 00:00:00 = 5	Minimum variable 0T 00:00:00	
0T 01:10:00 =		
Maximum 0T 02:00:00 = 🔄	Maximum variable 9999T 23:59:59	
Variable Heizdauer	Data type variable	
Driver	Driver name	
Intern	Driver for internal variables	
• •	Accept OK C	ancel



Parameter	Meaning
Parameter	Name of the TAG. Display only.
Description	Free description of the tag. Display only.
Туре	Type of the tag: Initial, value or return. Display only.
Data Type	Data type of the tag. Display only.
Changeable in the control recipe	Active: Value of the property can be changed in the control recipe.
	Only available if:
	The parameter is an initial or value parameter
	<ul> <li>it was configured in the Editor that the tag can be changed in the Batch recipe (property: Parameter value can be changed in master recipe).</li> </ul>
Minimum	Minimum value for the tag in format: <b>T hh:mm:ss</b>
	<ul> <li>Default from the Editor can be changed when the</li> <li>IsEditableLimitsInRecipeLocal property was activated in the Editor (on page 24).</li> <li>If the value is changed, it is marked with the symbol (on page 151) on the right side of the value. Changed values can be overwritten with the default from the Editor with the help of the button right next to it. For control strategies, synchronization takes place with the values that were set in the control strategy when linking parameters.</li> </ul>
Minimum variable	Allowed minimum value of the variable.
Duration	Value of the parameter in the format: <b>D hh:mm:ss.</b>
	Default from the Editor can be changed when the <b>Parameter</b> <b>value can be changed in master recipe</b> property was activated in the Editor (on page 24). If the value is changed, it is marked with the symbol (on page 151) on the right side of the value. Changed values can be overwritten with the default from the Editor with the help of the button right next to it. For control strategies, synchronization takes place with the values that were set in the control strategy when linking parameters.
Unit	Unit of the value.
Maximum	Maximum value for the tag in format: <b>D hh:mm:ss</b> .
	Default from the Editor can be changed when the IsEditableLimitsInRecipeLocal property was activated in the Editor (on page 24). If the value is changed, it is marked with the symbol (on page



<ul><li>151) on the right side of the value. Changed values can be overwritten with the default from the Editor with the help of the button right next to it. For control strategies, synchronization takes place with the values that were set in the control strategy when linking parameters.</li><li>Allowed minimum value of the variable. Display only.</li></ul>	
Allowed minimum value of the variable. Display only	
Variable which is linked to the tag. Display only.	
Data type of the variable. Display only.	
Driver of the variable. Display only.	
Description of the driver of the variable. Display only.	
Navigating through the tags.	
They are displayed in the order of the list. At this only tags are displayed which are visible with the current filter and grouping.	
If changes were done, there is a prompt before you can change to another tag whether the changes should be applied or discarded. If changes should be applied, the input is checked before advancing.	
Applies all changes if the check of the changes was successful. The dialog remains open for further editing.	
Applies all changes and closes the dialog if the check of the changes was successful.	
Discards all changes which have not been taken over yet and closes the dialog.	

### Change parameter values using the keyboard

Values for **numerical parameters** and **string parameters** can only be amended in the parameter list directly using a keyboard screen.

Configuration in the Editor:

Link the parameter variable to a reaction matrix.
 Numerical variables and string variables are permitted.

The reaction matrix must be the same type as the variable. For each value, you need a status with:

- a) Value same
- b) Limit value text
- 2. Create a keyboard for the statuses configured in the reaction matrix with control elements for:
  - Display value as text



### • Set value input

- ок
- 3. Link the keyboard to the parameter.

#### Application in Runtime:

- Click on the cell for the value in the parameter list. The keyboard is opened.
- 2. Click on the desired condition.

The value is displayed in the **set value input**.

3. Click on **ok**.

The value is written to the parameters.

### **Column selection**

Column settings	×
Column selection       Available columns:         Changeable in control recipe       Driver         Driver name       Add>         Maximum tag       Add all ->         Min. value variable       Add all ->         Minimum tag       Modified         String length       < Delete	Selected columns:          Name       Cancel         Description       Type         Tag data type       Value numeric         Value binary       Value binary         Value binary       Value binary         Value binary       Cancel         Max. time variable       Max. time variable         Changeable in recipe       Down



Option	Function
Available columns	List of columns that can be displayed in the table.
Selected columns	Columns that are displayed in the table.
Add ->	Moves the selected column from the available ones to the selected items. After you confirm the dialog with OK, they are shown in the detail view.
Add all ->	Moves all available columns to the selected columns.
<- Remove	Removes the marked columns from the selected items and shows them in the list of available columns. After you confirm the dialog with OK, they are removed from the detail view.
<- Remove all	All columns are removed from the list of the selected columns.
Up	Moves the selected entry upward. This function is only available for unique entries, multiple selection is not possible.
Down	Moves the selected entry downward. This function is only available for unique entries, multiple selection is not possible.

### CLOSE DIALOG

Options	Description
ок	Applies settings and closes the dialog.
Cancel	Discards all changes and closes the dialog.
Help	Opens online help.



# **Column Format**

Column settin	gs	Ν	×
Format colum Available co Description Type Tag data t Variable Value stim Value stim Value stime Min. time V Max. time	nns	Settings Text Name Width 22 Character Alignment © Left Centered © Right	OK Cancel

Parameter	Description
Available columns	List of the available columns via <b>Column selection</b> . The column selected here is configured using the settings in the <b>Parameters</b> section.
Parameter	Settings for selected column.
Labeling	Name for column title. The column title is online language switchable. To do this, you must enter the @ character in front of the name.
Width	Width of the column in characters.
Alignment	<ul> <li>Alignment.</li> <li>Possible settings:</li> <li>Left: Text is justified on the left edge of the column.</li> <li>Centered: Text is displayed centered in the column.</li> <li>Right: Text is justified on the right edge of the column.</li> </ul>
ок	Applies settings and closes the dialog.
Cancel	Discards settings and closes the dialog.



#### **Insert operations**

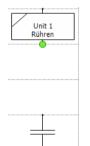
To insert an operation:

- 1. in the toolbar select the symbol for Insert operation
- 2. move the mouse to the desired position
- 3. place the operation
- 4. the dialog for selecting a template (on page 196) for the operation is opened
- 5. select the desired operation
- 6. The operation is inserted

### Lines

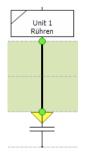
Lines connect elements via free connection points. To connect connection points with each other:

 Activate a point with the help of the mouse: The connection point turns green. Red means that the connection point is already taken.



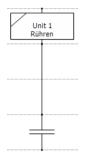
2. Drag a line to another connection point:

A yellow arrow shows the direction of the line.. Green fields can be crossed. Red fields may not be crossed by the line.





3. As soon as the yellow tip of the line touches the next connection point, the line is created.



#### LINE HANDLING

#### Lines:

- are dragged with the mouse
- Can be moved (press and hold Ctrl key) In doing so, all existing connections are separated and an attempt is made to reconnect the line if there are objects with connection points in the right direction at the target. If several lines are highlighted, the line that has a cell with mouse cursor in it is moved.
- ► Can be deleted by highlighting them and pressing the Del key.
- ▶ are deleted when re-dragging them from beginning to end
- have a tool tip displaying its ID.

If a line reaches a connection point of an object, the connection point becomes active. If a connection is possible, it turns green otherwise red. Connections connecting two connections points of the same type - two inputs, two outputs, etc. - are not allowed. The line can be added in any case. Not allowed connections are displayed in red and trigger a corresponding error message at testing.

The connection points of the elements are always displayed in the edit mode even if the connection point in question is connected. In status "Release" no connection points are displayed.

Properties connection point:

- connected: highlighted red; connection is separated when the line is dragged and a new connection point can be chosen
- open: highlighted green; at dragging a new line is created

### Transitions

Transitions are used after phases in order to ensure a defined transition from one phase to another. Transitions display their internal status during the process and inform via a tool tip about status and process duration.



For details about transitions see section Engineering in the Editor (on page 15) in chapter Transitions (on page 31).

### **Branches and parallel branches**

Recipes can branch (on page 173) and run in simultaneous sequences (on page 174).

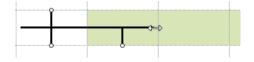
Branches and simultaneous sequences consist of:

- Single or double horizontal lines
- Connection pieces (consisting of connection line and connection point)

#### **CREATE A BRANCH**

To create a branch:

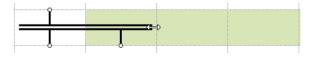
- 1. Select the symbol Insert begin branch.
- 2. Put the branch on the desired location.
- 3. Connect the input connection point to an output connection point of the preceding object.
- 4. Connect both output connection points with the desired following objects.
- 5. Close a branch with the object Insert end branch



#### **INSERT PARALLEL BRANCHES**

To create a parallel branch:

- 1. Select the symbol Insert begin parallel branch
- 2. Put the branch on the desired location.
- 3. Connect the input connection point to an output connection point of the preceding object.
- 4. Connect both output connection points with the desired following objects.
- 5. Close a parallel branch with the object Insert end parallel branch





#### **MODIFY AND MOVE**

Branches and parallel branches can be moved and changed in size.

#### MOVE

To move an object:

- 1. Click on the object.
- 2. Hold down the mouse button.
- 3. Move the object to the desired position.

#### **CHANGE SIZE**

**Begin/End branch/parallel branch** objects can be extended and shortened. To change their size:

- 1. Move the mouse pointer to the end of the object until it turns into a double arrow.
- 2. Hold down the left mouse button and move it in the desired direction:
  - away from the object to extend it
  - into the object to shorten it
- 3. At extending a new connection piece is added:
  - all fields which are concerned by the extension are marked green
  - to add several need connection pieces the process must be repeated
- 4. All corresponding connection pieces are deleted during shortening.

#### Branches

A branch offers the possibility to execute one of several possible ways. For this it is necessary that the first element at the beginning of a branch is a transition. This means that **Begin branch** can only be followed by a transition (on page 31).

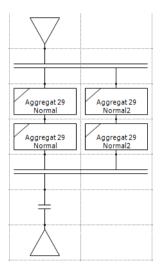
Procedure:

- The path is chosen for which the transition is TRUE first.
- ► If several transitions are TRUE at the same time, the leftmost path for which the transition is TRUE is always selected.

For begin and end the following is true: If there is a phase in front of the element and a transition behind, the phase remains active until the transition was completed.



In a branch the objects are processed sequentially. Each branch processes its objects independent of other branches.



### **Parallel branches**

At the parallel branch an execution path parts into several execution paths which are executed in parallel during the process. In the process the intermediate area of the **end parallel branch** is also colored. The color matches the coloring (on page 213) of the phase.

**End parallel branch** is displayed as active as soon as the first of several previous elements has been completed. There is a wait until all previous elements have been completed. **End parallel branch** is then shown as inactive and phase done.

The End parallel branch element is marked as active for:

- ▶ Transitions: Immediately after passing.
- Phases: If the phase done condition has been met and the minimum execution duration has expired.

During the execution the status is color-coded.

#### Split up and combine branches

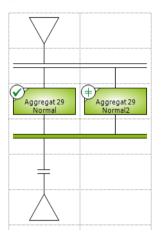
For parallel branches, the execution splits up a **Begin parallel branch** and combines the single branches again at **End parallel branch**. The paths of the parallel objects are independent branches. Only at **End simultaneous sequence** all branches are synchronized.

The possible branches are defined when the recipe is created. It is evident from the recipe execution in Runtime if the separate branches are allocated or unlocked. A branch is active as long as an object on it is active.



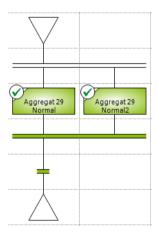
#### END PARALLEL BRANCH

An **End parallel branch** combines the branches of the connected paths. The object after **End simultaneous sequence** is activated when all paths reaches **End simultaneous sequence** with their process.



The left path is ready. Therefore **End simultaneous sequence** is already active. The transition after **End simultaneous sequence** is not yet active as the right branch is not yet completed.

When the right branch is also completed:



The transition after **End simultaneous sequence** is activated. All objects which were active before are still active.

### Jump targets

Jump targets make it possible to

- jump between branches
- To jump out of branches
- engineer loops



Jump targets consist of tree inputs and one output. At this the output is always at the bottom and the inputs are located at the top and the sides. You can connect any input connection points. A path which ends in a jump target must have started with a **Begin branch**. Otherwise the end is not reached. Jump targets are not allowed for parallel branches.

During the editing all connection points are visible. In the checking mode only the connection points which are connected are displayed.

### Allocate and configure unit

To allocate a unit:

- 1. In the toolbar select the symbol for Insert unit allocation
- 2. Move the mouse to the desired position
- 3. Place the **Unit allocation** element.
- 4. The element is inserted.

To configure the unit allocation:

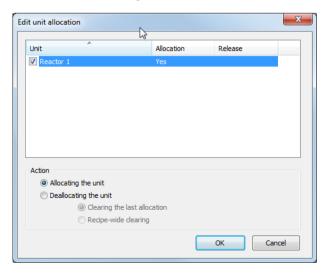
1. Double-click on the **Unit allocation** element.

The dialog for configuration is opened.

#### CONFIGURATION

In a configuration dialog you can select the units which exist in the batch recipe. It is distinguished between allocation and release. Releases can be set selectively and globally. Units which were selected before and no longer exist in the recipe, are displayed with an appropriate note.

If the dialog is opened in an approved recipe, then it is displayed as "read only". All entries can be viewed but not changed.





Parameter	Description
List of units	Displays existing units and their assigned actions.
Action	Assigns an action to the unit selected in the list.
Allocation of the unit.	Allocates the unit.
Release of the unit.	Releases the unit:
	Release of the last allocation: The last allocation is released.
	Recipe-spanning release: All allocations in the recipe are released.
ок	Applies settings and closes the dialog.
Cancel	Discards changes and closes dialog.

### ALLOCATE AND RELEASE UNITS

The allocation of a unit by element unit allocation or by a phase is only possible if the unit is not yet allocated or only in the same recipe. The assignment and approval of all units that are linked in the element is carried out at the same time. It is always waited until all units which should be allocated are released. Then all allocations and releases are executed. Phases which are located in front of an element unit allocation remain active until the allocation was successful.

Unit allocations remain in place as long as the phase is active. When the recipe is finished and there are still allocations of elements **Unit allocation** active, they are released implicitly.

Note: A phase with the paused or held status does not attempt to allocate the unit. This also applies if the phase is switched to paused or held whilst waiting. An attempt to allocate the unit is only made after a restart. But: In manual mode you can force the allocation of a unit by another recipe. The recipe with the first allocation keeps the control and takes priority at the execution. If this recipe withdraws its main allocation, the recipe with the longest active forced allocation takes over the main allocation.

### ACTIONS

For each unit which is used in the recipe, you can define an action:

- no action
- ▶ allocate
- release

#### TOOL TIP

In the tool tip of element **Unit allocation** all units are displayed which are marked for allocation or release. During the execution the Execution duration (on page 30) is stated and all units for which you must wait are color-coded. You must wait for units if they are allocated in another recipe.



### **End element**

Last element in the process. It is automatically created in the editor when a recipe is created and it cannot be deleted.

# 8.4.4 Matrix recipe

If you selected matrix recipe in dialog **Configuration master recipe** and exited the dialog with OK, the newly created recipe opens on a new tab in the matrix editor (on page 178).

🎦 🗔   😍   🗙	✔   🖉 🖓 🖓 🖛 🔿 🀐 🞝
4 Matrix_2 x	
	È È
$-\phi$	

### Matrix editor

. . .

In the matrix editor you can create your recipes and operations in a matrix.

JobID

# **Batch Control**

Master recipe name												
	n	Master recip	Master recip	be s Ve	ersion Initial .	New	Master recipe: M1 (v1					
Filter text	Y	Filter text 🛛	Filter text	▼ Filt	te 🔻 Filte	Open	1 🖌 🐨 🖌	<ul> <li>Init so to 1</li> </ul>	(m m)   44 10			
Master2			Released		1	Edit	• •M1 (V1) X		/			
Master1	-		Released		1	Duplicate		Storage Tank 2 fill	Mixing Tank 2 add water	Mixing Tank 2 add sugar	Storage Tank 1 flush	E E
Master2	-		Edit mode		2	Rename						
M1			Edit mode		1	Test	1 Step	Active	Active	Active	Active	
						Release	2	Inactive	Inactive	Inactive	Active	
						Delete	Step	proceive	processe	and the		
						new version Export	3 Step	Inactive	Inactive	Inactive	Inactive	
						ol. selection.	-					
<					>	Format cols						
		mpleted tdated	Dvnam	ically up	date show d	ontrol recipes						
Control recipes	I ou	tdated	Dynam									
Control recipes Master recipe name	I ou	tdated Master recipe (	descr Mast	er recipe	e s Version	New						
Control recipes Master recipe name Filter text	I ou	tdated	descr Mast	ter recipe		New Open						
Control recipes Master recipe name Filter text	I ou	tdated Master recipe (	descr Mast	ter recipe	e s Version	New Open Duplicate						
Control recipes Master recipe name Filter text	I ou	tdated Master recipe (	descr Mast	ter recipe	e s Version	New Open Duplicate Rename						
Control recipes Master recipe name Filter text	I ou	tdated Master recipe (	descr Mast	ter recipe	e s Version	New Open Duplicate Rename Delete						
Control recipes Master recipe name Filter text	I ou	tdated Master recipe (	descr Mast	ter recipe	e s Version	New Open Duplicate Rename Delete Start:						
Control recipes Master recipe name	I ou	tdated Master recipe (	descr Mast	ter recipe	e s Version	New Open Duplicate Rename Delete						
Control recipes Master recipe name Filter text	I ou	tdated Master recipe (	descr Mast	ter recipe	e s Version	New Open Duplicate Rename Delete Start:						
Control recipes Master recipe name Filter text	I ou	tdated Master recipe (	descr Mast	ter recipe	e s Version	New Open Duplicate Rename Delete Start:						
Control recipes Master recipe name Filter text	I ou	tdated Master recipe (	descr Mast	ter recipe	e s Version	New Open Duplicate Rename Delete Start:						
Control recipes Master recipe name Filter text	I ou	tdated Master recipe (	descr Mast	ter recipe	e s Version	New Open Duplicate Rename Delete Start:						
Control recipes Master recipe name Filter text	I ou	tdated Master recipe (	descr Mast	ter recipe	a s Version ▼ Filte ▼ 1	New Open Duplicate Rename Delete Start Export	✓ 咽4x3om/5		1 <b>b</b> t = / -		207%	• • • • •



#### Technical details:

- Columns contain phases (on page 182) and operations (on page 184): Phases are inserted by clicking on the symbol above the diagonal Phases are inserted by clicking on the symbol below the diagonal
- Lines contain steps with active/inactive phases.
   Clicking on the plus sign inserts a new line or column with a phase or operation into the matrix.
- ► Delete column/row Press the Del key to delete the highlighted row or column.
- Move lines/columns: Lines and columns can be moved via drag & drop with the help of the mouse. Individual labels of steps remain; the step number is adapted automatically.
- Border cells:
  - Double click on phase: opens the dialog (on page 182) for configuring the phase.
  - Double click on step: opens the dialog for labeling (on page 182) the step.
- Selection of lines/columns:
  - left mouse click in border cell: selects a line/column.
  - Ctrl key + mouse click in border cell: selects additional line/column.
- Cells:
  - left mouse click: selects empty cell.
  - Shift key + click: activates/deactivates phase.
  - Ctrl key + click: selects several cells.
  - Double click on cell: opens the dialog for configuring (on page 182) the phase.
- Scroll bar: Is displayed if the document is larger than the frame.
- Scrolling with a mouse wheel: up and down or, if you press and hold Shift, left and right.

#### **Toolbars matrix recipe**

Some symbols can also be configured as control elements (on page 52) in the screen. Touch operation is thus simplified.

#### TOOLBARS MATRIX RECIPE: EDIT MODE

12 🕞 👁 🗙 🖌 🖌 🛃 🗠 🗠 🛸 🧕 👘



Symbol	Description
New master recipe	Opens the dialog for creating a new master recipe.
Save master recipe	Saves the master recipe which is open for editing.
Graphical design	Opens the dialog (on page 132) to configure background colors, grid, and display of element ID.
Delete	Deletes the selected elements from the diagram.
	Multiple selection via Ctrl + mouse click keyboard shortcut.
Check recipe for errors	Checks recipe for errors and displays found errors in an information window. For several errors the first errors are displayed.
	The error message contains the error number, the ID of the element, its location and a message in plain text.
Edit element	Opens the corresponding dialog for editing the selected element.
Activate selected elements	Activates the phase of the operation of the selected cells.
Deactivate selected elements	Deactivates the phase or the operation of the selected cells.
Move selected columns to the right or move selected steps up	Moves the selected column to the left by one position or moves selected step up by one position.
Move selected columns to the right or move selected steps down	Moves the selected column to the right by one position or moves selected step down by one position.
Switch recipe to test mode	Switches recipe to the test mode. For this the recipe must be without errors.
Release recipe	Releases the recipe. With this a control recipe can be created.

### TOOLBARS MATRIX RECIPE: TEST MODE

▶ In et 回 전 I = × I 때 단 대 단 대 단 당 I ✔ I ● 🖳 🕹 I 가 하 좌 I ✔ 🚨 —



Parameter	Description
Start recipe	Starts the recipe process.
Recipe pausing	Pauses the recipe.
Recipe resuming	Resumes paused recipe.
Recipe holding	Holds recipe.
Restart recipe	Restarts held recipe.
Recipe stopping	Stops the recipe.
Recipe aborting	Aborts the recipe process.
Phase pausing	Pauses the phase.
Phase resuming	Resumes the process of a paused phase.
Phase holding	Holds phase.
Restart phase	Restarts held phase.
Escape phase	Starts process to exit from the phase.
Check recipe for errors	Starts recipe validation (on page 208).
Edit element	Opens the corresponding dialog for editing the selected element.
Graphical design	Opens the dialog (on page 132) to configure background colors, grid, and display of element ID.
Switch to automatic mode	Switches process to automatic mode.
Switch to semi-automatic mode	Switches process to semi-automatic mode.
Switch to manual mode	Switches process to manual mode.
Continue recipe only at selected execution position	Continues a recipe at the selected position.
Continue recipe at all execution positions	Continues a recipe on every available position.
Skip active condition	Skips an active condition.
	Only possible in the manual mode.
Edit mode	Switches from test mode to edit mode.
Release recipe	Releases the recipe. With this a control recipe can be created.

# MATRIX RECIPE TOOLBAR: APPROVED

🖌 🛃 💿 🗋 🎦



Parameter	Description
Check recipe for errors	Checks recipe for errors and displays found errors in an information window. For several errors the first errors are displayed.
	The error message contains the error number, the ID of the element, its location and a message in plain text.
Edit element	Opens the corresponding dialog for editing the selected element.
Graphical design	Opens the dialog (on page 132) to configure background colors, grid, and display of element ID.
Duplicate recipe	Created a copy of the recipe. The dialog for the input of a unique name and the description is opened.
Create control recipe	Creates a control recipe on the basis of the approved master recipe.

# Information

The functions of the individual symbols can also be configured using buttons and thus be made touch-operable. Toolbars can therefore also be hidden (on page 125).

#### Name steps

Steps in the matrix editor can be named individually. Double click on the cell to open the dialog for entering an individual name.

Description of the step	×
Description of the step	
@Step	
Note: A maximum of 100 characters is possible.	
OK Cancel	

The name can have up to 100 characters and is language switchable is preceded by a @.

## Add and configure phase

To add a phase:

1. Click on the plus sign above the diagonal in the last column of the matrix.

The dialog for selecting a phase is opened.

2. Select the desired phase.



To configure a phase:

1. Double click the matrix filed with the desired phase.

The dialog for configuration is opened.

Note: If a phase is set to inactive, the configuration remains saved as long as the recipe is in edit mode.

# CONFIGURATION

Edit phase	×
Phase active in this step	
Name	
Flush	
Description	
	<u></u>
Unit	Ť
Mixing Tank	
control strategy	
<no control="" linked="" strategy=""></no>	$\sim$
Description of control strategy	
	0
General Parameter	
Waiting period unit allocation	
Interlocking condition Waiting period input interlocking	
OD 00:00:00 = 5	
	-
Phase done condition         Maximum execution duration           (X01.Value = 2)          0D 00:00:00         = 55	
Minimum execution duration	
0D 00:00:00 = 🔄 Changeable in the control recipe	
Waiting period following condition	
OK Cance	



Parameter	Description	
Phase active in this step	Active: Phase is active in this step	
Name	Name of the phase. Display only.	
Description	Comment about the phase. Display only.	
Unit	Unit on which the phase is carried out. Only display.	
Control strategy	Selection of a control strategy (on page 200) from a drop-down list.	
	Only available if control strategies have been configured (on page 44) for this phase.	
	Default: no Control strategy linked	
Description of control strategy	Description of the selected control strategy.	
	Display of the description entered in the Editor only.	
General	Tab for configuration of general properties.	
Parameter	Tab for configuration of parameters.	
ОК	Applies all changes on all tabs and closes the dialog.	
Cancel	Discards all changes on all tabs and closes the dialog.	

Configuration of the tabs see section PFC editor (on page 143)/chapter:

- General: (on page 151) Display and configuration of the settings for the phase
- ▶ Parameter (on page 156): Configuration of the tags

# RULES FOR EDITING A PHASE

A phase can be edited:

- ► In a master recipe in edit mode: If the user has sufficient rights.
- ▶ In a master recipe in test mode: If the user has sufficient rights and the phase is not active.
- ► In a control recipe with prepared status: If the user has sufficient rights and the Changeable in the control recipe option has been activated.
- ► In a control recipe with running status: If the user has sufficient rights, the Changeable in the control recipe option has been activated and the phase is not active.

The phase can no longer be edited in pre-configured control recipes and in approved master recipes.

#### **Insert operation**

To insert an operation (on page 190):



- Click on the plus sign below the diagonal in the last column of the matrix.
   The dialog for selecting an operation template (on page 196) is opened.
- Select the desired operation template.
   A new operation is inserted.

# 8.4.5 Master recipe - test mode

The test mode is used to test master recipes without releasing it and creating control recipes. In addition in the test mode changes in the Editor can be applied directly via reloading the Runtime. **Exception:** During the execution of a recipe, the reloading of a recipe is delayed. Not until the recipe is finished, stopped or aborted, the reloading process is executed.

In test mode you cannot can the principle recipe process. You can only change values of the command tags. Changes are directly saved in the master recipe. It is not necessary to save explicitly.

) IN 🖻 🗅 Q I 🖿 🗙 I 🖬 😳 100 😳 100 🐨 100 I 🖉 🖉 💿 🛄 🗛 🍐 I 🐂 🎝 🏹 🖊 🔕 I



Parameter	Description
Start recipe	Starts the recipe process.
Recipe pausing	Pauses the recipe.
Recipe resuming	Resumes paused recipe.
Recipe holding	Holds recipe.
Restart recipe	Restarts held recipe.
Recipe stopping	Stops the recipe.
Recipe aborting	Aborts the recipe process.
Phase pausing	Pauses the selected phase.
Phase resuming	Resumes the process of the selected paused phase.
Phase holding	Holds the selected phase.
Restart phase	Restarts the selected held phase.
Check recipe for errors	Checks recipe for errors and displays found errors in an information window. For several errors the first errors are displayed.
	The error message contains the error number, the ID of the element, its location and a message in plain text.
Edit element	Opens the corresponding dialog for editing the selected element.
Graphical design	Opens the dialog (on page 132) to configure background colors, grid, and display of element ID.
Switch to automatic mode	Switches process to automatic mode.
Switch to semi-automatic mode	Switches process to semi-automatic mode.
Switch to manual mode	Switches process to manual mode.
Continue recipe only at selected execution position	Continues a recipe at the selected position.
Continue recipe at all execution positions	Continues a recipe on every available position.
Skip active condition	Skips an active condition.
	Only possible in the manual mode.
Switch recipe to edit mode	Switches from test mode to edit mode.
Release recipe	Releases the recipe. With this a control recipe can be created.



# 8.4.6 Release master recipe

You can release a master recipe by selecting it and clicking button **Release master recipe**. Several recipes can also be selected and approved together. Approval must be confirmed by means of a dialog. Dialogs for unit allocations, transitions and phases can be opened as write-protected.

# Information

Only master recipes without errors can be released. A released master recipe can no longer be edited.

For each recipe you can create a copy of the released master recipe by clicking on button **Duplicate recipe**. This copy can then be edited.

Recipes can only be approved if all operations contained therein have also been approved.

# 8.4.7 Highlight recipe as outdated

Recipes that are no longer valid but have not been deleted should be marked as outdated. If a recipe is set to this status, it can no longer be edited or approved. No control recipe can be created on the basis of this recipe either. The recipe can however be duplicated and thus be used as the basis for new master recipes.

Only recipes that have the status approved can be marked as outdated. The following applies for attendant control recipes:

- ► Control recipes that are currently being executed continue to be executed
- Control recipes with the prepared status can no longer be executed

# 8.4.8 Versioning for master recipes

Master recipes can also be versioned. In doing so, a copy of an approved or obsolete report is created. This copy is in edit mode and contains a unique version number. The new recipe can be edited, but not renamed. Individual versions, including the source recipe itself, can be deleted.

#### **CREATING A VERSION**

To use versioning in Runtime:



- 1. In the Editor, navigate to the General/Versioning properties group in the Batch Control node.
- 2. Activate the Versioning active property.
- 3. Versioning is switched on and used in Runtime.

To create a new version of a recipe in Runtime:

- Select the desired master recipe. Note: The recipe must be approved or obsolete.
- 2. Select, in the context menu or on the toolbar, **Create new version** or click on the corresponding button in the screen.
- 3. A new recipe is created.

#### **RULES FOR VERSIONING**

The following applies to versioning:

- A new version of a recipe contains the same name as the source recipe.
- New versions of a recipe cannot be renamed. Not even if the version is in editing mode and it is the only remaining version.
- The description can be changed for each version.
- ► Each version contains a unique version number that is issued on a serial basis. Version numbers of deleted recipes remain blocked and are not reissued.
- The version number of the new recipe and the version number of the source recipe are displayed in their own columns in the list of master recipes.
- Version numbers are also displayed in the title bar of the recipe editor and in the tab of the recipe as well as in the list of the control recipes and in tooltips.

#### ONLY APPROVE ONE VERSION

It is possible to only allow one version of each master recipe to be approved. To do this, activate the **Release one version only** property in the Editor. Only one version of each master recipe can be approved in Runtime. If a different version is approved, the one that was approved before must first be deleted or marked as obsolete.



# 8.4.9 Actions

Action	Description
Check recipe for errors	Checks the recipe for errors and displays error messages.
Edit element	Opens the corresponding dialog for editing the selected element.
Graphical design	Opens the dialog (on page 132) to configure background colors, grid, and display of element ID.
Duplicate recipe	Copies the selected recipe and adds it as copy to the list.
Create control recipe	Creates a control recipe on the basis of the approved master recipe.
New master recipe	Opens the dialog (on page 138) for creating a new recipe.
Save master recipe	Saves all changes which were done since the last saving.
Delete	Deletes the selected element.
Exchange phase	Opens the dialog (on page 151) for selecting a phase. The present phase is replaced by the newly selected phase.
Edit mode	Switches the mouse cursor from adding an element to edit mode. The switch back to the edit mode can also be achieved by pressing the Esc key.
Insert phase	Occupies the mouse cursor with a phase (on page 148). It can be added to any allowed, free location via click.
Insert transition	Occupies the mouse cursor with a transition (on page 171). It can be added to any allowed, free location via click.
Insert Begin parallel branch	Occupies the mouse cursor with a begin parallel branch (on page 174). It can be added to any allowed, free location via click.
Insert End parallel branch	Occupies the mouse cursor with an end parallel branch (on page 174). It can be added to any allowed, free location via click.
Insert Begin branch	Occupies the mouse cursor with a begin branch (on page 172). It can be added to any allowed, free location via click.
Insert End branch	Occupies the mouse cursor with an end branch (on page 172). It can be added to any allowed, free location via click.
Insert unit allocation	Occupies the mouse cursor with a unit allocation (on page 176). It can be added to any allowed, free location via click.



Insert jump target	Occupies the mouse cursor with a jump target (on page 175). It can be added to any allowed, free location via click.
Switch recipe to test mode	Switches recipe to the test mode (on page 185).
Release recipe	Releases (on page 187) the recipe. With this a control recipe can be created.

# 8.5 **Operations**

Operations form a substructure that can be embedded in recipes. This can provide a better overview in complex recipes. Operations are created in a similar manner to matrix recipes or PFC recipes. The operations are created on the basis of templates (on page 196) and as an instance in existing matrix recipes or PFC recipes.

# **CREATING AN OPERATION**

To create a new operation:

- 1. In the Recipe editor (on page 123) switch the list of operations to visible (activate checkbox)
- 2. Select, in the toolbar or context menu (on page 193) of the list, the **New operation** command.
- 3. The dialog for configuring an operation is opened.

Operation configuration	
Matrix recipe	
PFC recipe	
Name	
New operation	
Description	
	A
	-
	4
	OK Cancel



Parameter	Description
Matrix recipe	Activate this radio button if you want to create an operation in the form of a matrix recipe (on page 178).
	Note: Only possible if the corresponding license is available.
PFC recipe	Activate this radio button if you want to create an operation in the form of a PFC recipe (on page 142).
	Note: Only possible if the corresponding license is available.
Name	Unique name for the operation. The name must not contain a dot (.), a question mark (?), a @ or an asterisk (*).
	Maximum length: 256 characters.
	<b>Note:</b> When you copy an operation the existing name is complemented with the prefix " <b>Copy of</b> ". If the maximum length is exceeded by this, the name is shortened to the allowed length starting from the last character.
	The uniqueness is checked in the entire network. Therefore it can happen that you cannot take over the name as another user on another computer in the zenon network already has used the same name and you do not see the recipe in the list of the operations yet.
	The recipe names can be changed later but only as long as the recipe has the status editable.
Description	Optional description for the operation which should be created.
	The description can be changed later but only as long as the operation has the status editable. To change the description select the symbol <b>Rename</b> operation.
ок	Applies all settings and created a new operation.
Cancel	Closes the dialog without creating an operation.

Configuration in the Recipe Editor is similar to the creation and configuration of PFC recipes (on page 142) and Matrix recipes (on page 178).

Changes to operations are only visible for the user in the operation instance if the operation instance has been saved.

# **OPENING OPERATIONS**

Existing operations can be opened by:

- > Double-clicking on an operation in the list of the operations
- > The **Open in Recipe Editor** command in the context menu of an operation
- Clicking on the **Open** symbol in the toolbar



#### **USING OPERATIONS**

Operations can be inserted in recipes in the matrix editor or in the PFC editor and used as part of the recipe there.

You insert operations:

- ► In the PFC recipe using the **Insert operation** (on page 170) symbol
- ▶ In the matrix recipe using the **Add operation** (on page 184) symbol

Phases and commands can be executed within operations. The position of the object in the recipe is also given in the CEL when a command is executed.

When inserting an operation into a recipe, the currently-saved version is always inserted. If the operation is open for editing, all unsaved changes are thus also not part of the inserted instance.

#### SAVING OPERATIONS

Operations are, as instances, always part of the master recipe in which they are integrated. If an operation instance is saved, the attendant master recipe is also saved automatically.

#### TOOL TIP

Operations have a tooltip. The following are displayed as soon as they have been executed once:

- Execution status: Contains current status and original status (status from which the operation comes). The original status is evident from the visual coloring and does not always correspond to the actual last status.
- Execution counter
- Error: Shows the number of objects that currently have an error status and the number of objects that have had an error status.
- Exit from phase: Number of objects that are being exited from or have been exited from
- ► Total duration with time points of activation and deactivation
- Information about the status of the internal objects: Number of objects with the respective status (except idle)



# 8.5.1 Toolbar and context menu operations

## **TOOLBAR LIST**

Parameter	Description
New operation	Creates a new operation.
Open operation in Editor	Opens the selected operation in the recipe editor.
Rename the operation	Opens the dialog to rename a recipe.
Duplicate operation	Duplicates the selected operation.
Delete operation	Deletes the selected operation.
Export selected as XML	Exports the selected operation as an XML file.
Import XML	Imports the selected XML file as operation(s).
Release operation	Checks the selected operation and approves it if no errors were found.
Column selection	Opens the dialog to select a column (on page 94).
Column format	Opens the dialog to format a column (on page 98).

# CONTEXT MENU

Parameter	Description	
New operation	Creates a new operation.	
Rename	Opens the dialog to name a recipe.	
Duplicate	Duplicates the selected operation.	
Delete	Deletes the selected operation.	
Export selected as XML	Exports the selected operation as an XML file.	
Import XML	Imports the selected XML file as operation(s).	
Open in Editor	Opens the selected operation in the recipe editor.	
Release	Checks the selected operation and approves it if no errors were found.	

# TOOLBAR PFC EDITOR: EDIT MODE

🎦 🗟 | つ | 🗙 | 🖌 🖄 🖗 📘 ウキュティナ 〇 🕨 🚨 👘



Parameter	Description
New operation	Opens the dialog for creating a new operation.
Save operation	Saves the master recipe which is open for editing.
Graphical design	Opens the dialog (on page 132) to configure background colors, grid, and display of element ID.
Delete	Deletes the selected elements from the diagram.
	Multiple selection via Ctrl key + mouse click.
Check operation for errors	Checks recipe for errors and displays found errors in an information window. For several errors the first errors are displayed.
	The error message contains the error number, the ID of the element, its location and a message in plain text.
Edit element	Opens the corresponding dialog for editing the selected element.
Exchange phase	Opens dialog for selecting a phase and replaces the existing phase by the newly selected phase. Several phases can be selected and replaced together
	Shortcut: Shift key + double-click
Edit mode	Toggles between insert mode and edit mode.
Insert phase	Adds a phase.
Insert transition	Adds a transition.
Insert Begin parallel branch	Adds the start of a parallel branch.
Insert End parallel branch	Adds an end of a parallel branch.
Insert Begin branch	Adds a begin branch.
Insert End branch	Adds an end branch.
Insert unit allocation	Adds a unit allocation.
Insert jump target	Adds a jump target.
Release operation	Releases the recipe.



**Note:** Insertions remain active until you change to the edit mode using the **Edit mode** symbol, the Esc key or you change to another insert option via a symbol for adding a new element.

#### PFC RECIPE TOOLBAR: APPROVED

✓.	En	Э	

Parameter	Description
Check operation for errors	Checks recipe for errors and displays found errors in an information window. For several errors the first errors are displayed.
	The error message contains the error number, the ID of the element, its location and a message in plain text.
Edit element	Opens the corresponding dialog for editing the selected element.
	The dialog is opened in write-protected mode, because it is no longer possible to edit approved recipes.
Graphical design	Opens the dialog (on page 132) to configure background colors, grid, and display of element ID.
Duplicate operation	Created a copy of the recipe. The dialog for the input of a unique name and the description is opened.



# 8.5.2 Selection of the template for an operation

Operations can be inserted into recipes as an instance. When inserting an operation into a matrix recipe (on page 184) or a PFC recipe (on page 170), the dialog to select a template for an operation is opened. This contains all previously-configured (on page 190) operations:

@Selection of the operation templat	es			X
Workspace BATCH_2013	Teilrezept Name 💏	@Teilrezept Typ @1	Teilrezept Beschreibung	
BAICH_2013	Filter text 🛛 🖓	Filter text 🛛 🍸	Filter text	
	Operation_1	PFC		
	Operation_2	Matrix		
	Operation_3	Matrix		
	<ul> <li>✓ III</li> <li>3 total / 3 filtered / 0 selected</li> </ul>		Þ	~
	No selection		OK Cancel	



Parameters	Description
List workspace	In the standard dialog to display the projects present in the workspace. No function in Batch Control, because operations can always be selected from the respective active project.
	<b>Hint:</b> Drag this area down to the minimum size. It is then only displayed as minimized* in the future.
Operation list	Contains all operations that have been created. Any desired operations (matrix or PFC) can be selected for both editors (matrix and PFC).
	Entries can:
	<ul> <li>be sorted by clicking on the column title; another click inverts the sorting</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>be filtered into filter rows by alphanumeric entries (wildcards can be used)</li> </ul>
Cursor keys	Move the selection:
	▶ Up
	Down
Status Line	Display:
	Number of entries
	Number of filtered entries displayed
	Number of selected entries
No selection	Cancels existing selection for existing operation and closes the dialog.
ОК	Accepts selection, closes dialog and inserts operation.
Cancel	Discards selection and closes dialog without selecting or amending a template.

\*workspace minimized:



	ň	@Teilrezept Typ @	Teilrezept Beschreibung		@Teilrezept Status	
Filter text	$\nabla$	Filter text 🛛 🖓	Filter text	$\forall$	Filter text 🛛 🗑	7
Operation_1		PFC			@Edit mode	
Operation_2		Matrix			@Edit mode	
Operation_3		Matrix			@Edit mode	

# 8.5.3 Status operation

The status shown for an operation always represents the status of the object with the highest priority in the operation.

The following applies to the colored identification:

- ▶ Non-transient status: the whole operation is colored
- > Transient status: Original status and target status are displayed
- ► HOLDING as original status: RUNNING (green) is always displayed

# PRIORITY

Priority of the objects in an operation, starting with the highest priority:

- 1. ABORTING
- 2. ABORTED
- 3. STOPPING
- 4. STOPPED
- 5. RESTARTING
- 6. HOLDING



\_

- 7. HELD
- 8. PAUSING
- 9. PAUSED
- $10. \ \text{RUNNING}$
- **11.** COMPLETE
- **12.** IDLE

# 8.5.4 Symbol for execution

The symbols correspond to the symbols (on page 213) generally used the REE. Operations are symbolized in the REE by triangles in the left and right corner.

Symbol	Description	Tool tip
New operation	Idle:	Idle
	No object is active in the operation.	
New operation	In execution:	Execution of the
	A symbol is always displayed whilst an operation is running.	internal objects.
	If objects are still running in the operation, the progress symbol is shown.	
New Operation	Active element active	
New Operation	End of operation:	Waiting for
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	If objects are already active after the operation, the symbol for <b>following condition</b> is displayed.	Following conditions.
New Operation	In the operation at least one execution position is waiting:	
	Is shown if, in semi-automatic or manual mode, execution after a phase is in the operation.	
New operation	If an object has a different status within the operation, then a symbol is also displayed on the top right.	
	There is a different status if an object has an empty status within the operation that does not correspond to the status of the operation and is not idle or complete.	



# 8.6 Control strategies

Control strategies can be selected in Runtime when configuring the phase in the PFC recipe (on page 148) or matrix recipe (on page 182). They must have already been configured in the zenon Editor (on page 44).

Control strategies can only be changed:

- In master recipes
  - In editing mode
  - Test mode
- In operation templates:
  - In editing mode

The control strategy cannot be changed in operation instances.

#### COMMAND PARAMETERS IN THE PHASE

If control strategies are activated for a phase (Active control strategies property in the Editor), all command parameters are initially removed when this phase is inserted into a recipe.

If the control strategy is changed in the dialog to edit a phase, then:

- ► All parameters currently in this phase are removed
- The linked parameters in the newly-selected control strategy are inserted

These parameters are only initialized with the values that the parameter linkings currently have. The existing Runtime configurations of the parameters is lost in the process.

If a control strategy is selected for a phase, then the parameters to write to **control strategy number** are inserted in addition to the linked parameters. This parameter gets the parameter number as a numerical value. It is not a recipe parameter. If the same parameter is already linked to the control strategy, the configuration of the linking is ignored!

# SYNCHRONIZATION OF CHANGES TO CONTROL STRATEGIES AND CONTROL STRATEGY ACTIVATION

During synchronization (on page 249), changes made in the Editor for control strategies are carried over for phases. For details, see the **synchronization** (on page 249) chapter.

#### DISPLAY OF THE CONTROL STRATEGY

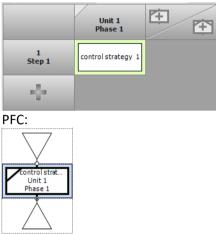
Selected control strategies are displayed:

► In the tooltip of the phase (no display if no control strategy has been selected)



• In the phase in the recipe.

# Matrix:



- ▶ In the unit information for the active phases as an appendix
- In the report (on page 253) for a phase

# CONTROL STRATEGIES AND VARIABLES

If a phase is selected in the recipe, the variables for the control strategy are filled.



Parameter	Data Type	Description
Control strategy name	STRING	Displays the <b>Name</b> of the control strategy that is linked to the selected phase.
		Is empty if:
		No phase is selected
		The phase does not use any control strategies
		<ul> <li>There is no control strategy currently linked to the phase</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>With multiple selection</li> </ul>
Description of control strategy	STRING	Displays the <b>Description</b> of the control strategy that is linked to the selected phase.
		Is empty if:
		No phase is selected
		The phase does not use any control strategies
		<ul> <li>There is no control strategy currently linked to the phase</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>With multiple selection</li> </ul>
control strategy number	LINT	Displays the <b>control strategy number</b> of the control strategy that is linked to the selected phase.
		Is -1 if:
		No phase is selected
		The phase does not use any control strategies
		There is no control strategy currently linked to the phase
		<ul> <li>With multiple selection</li> </ul>

# **TOUCH OPERATION**

Control strategies can also easily be assigned a phase in Runtime by means of touch operation instead of the dialog.

To do this:

- 1. Configure the control elements for the list and the button for assignment in the Editor.
- 2. Stipulate the columns to be displayed in the screen switching. You can also pre-define filters if required.
- 3. Highlight the desired phase in Runtime.
- 4. Select the desired control strategy in the filter list.



#### 5. Tap the **Apply control strategy** button.

Name	M	Description	control st
Filter text	Y	Filter text	' Filter t
CS 3			
4			1
	Appl	y control strate	egy

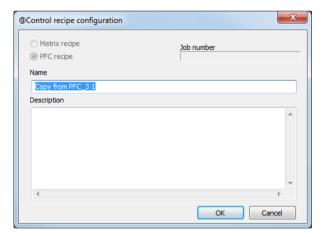
The control strategy is applied to the phase.

# 8.7 Control recipe

Control recipes are copies of approved master recipes that are used for production.

# 8.7.1 Create control recipe

You can create control recipes only based on released master recipes. Select the released master recipe in the list of the master recipes, which should serve as basis for your control recipe and click on button **New control recipe...**.





Parameter	Description
Matrix recipe	Active: A matrix control recipe is created.
	Display only.
PFC recipe	Active: A PFC control recipe is created.
	Display only.
Job ID	The job ID provided by the job variables (on page 62).
Name	Unique name for the control recipe. The name must not contain a dot (.), a question mark (?), a @ or an asterisk (*).
	The uniqueness is checked in the entire network. Therefore it can happen that a name is not accepted as another user already used the same name on another computer in the zenon network at the same time.
	You can change the name afterwards as long as the recipe has status Prepared.
Description	Optional description of the recipe.
ок	Applies settings and closes the dialog.
Cancel	Discards all changes and closes the dialog.

If the control recipe was created using the symbol in the toolbar, then it is automatically opened in a new tab in the recipe editor provided this has been configured in the screen. If the control recipe has been created using the context menu, it is not opened in the recipe editor.

The newly created recipe is also displayed in the list of control recipes even if it does not match the set filter criteria.

# 8.7.2 Toolbar and context menu for control recipe list view

# TOOLBAR



Symbol	Description
Open control recipe in Editor	Opens the selected recipe in the recipe editor.
Rename control recipe	Opens dialog to rename the selected recipe.
Duplicate control recipe	Creates a copy of the selected recipe and opens the dialog to rename the duplicate.
Delete control recipe	Deletes selected recipes.
Export selected as XML	Exports the selected control recipe as an XML file.
Import XML	Imports the selected XML file as operation(s).
Start control recipe	Starts selected control recipe.
Column selection	Opens the dialog for selecting the columns which should be displayed.
Column format	Opens the dialog for configuring the column formats.

## CONTEXT MENU

Command	Description
Open in Recipe Editor	Opens the selected recipe in the Editor.
Rename	Opens dialog to rename the selected recipe.
Duplicate	Created a copy of the recipe. The dialog for the input of a unique name and the description is opened.
Delete	Deletes selected recipes.
Export selected as XML	Exports the selected control recipe as an XML file.
Import XML	Imports the selected XML file as operation(s).
Start	Starts selected control recipe.

# 8.7.3 Control recipe edit mode toolbar

🕨 🖿 😋 🕫 🔍 🗐 🗶 🕼 😳 🙃 전용 🕼 🖌 📝 🖉 💿 🛄 🕾 🖕 🖄 🖏 🏹 🗋



Parameter	Туре	Description
Start recipe	Command	Starts the recipe process.
Recipe pausing	Command	Pauses the recipe.
Recipe resuming	Command	Resumes paused recipe.
Recipe holding	Command	Holds recipe.
Restart recipe	Command	Restarts held recipe.
Recipe stopping	Command	Stops the recipe.
Recipe aborting	Command	Aborts the recipe process.
Phase pausing	Command	Pauses the phase.
Resume phase	Command	Resumes the process of a paused phase.
Hold phase	Command	Holds phase.
Restart phase	Command	Restarts held phase.
Escape phase	Command	Starts process to exit (on page 231) from the phase.
Check recipe for errors.	Action	Starts recipe validation (on page 208).
Edit element	Action	Opens the corresponding dialog for editing the selected element.
Graphical design	Action	Opens the dialog (on page 132) to configure background colors, grid, and display of element ID.
Switch to automatic mode	Command	Switches process to automatic mode.
Switch to semi-automatic mode	Command	Switches process to semi-automatic mode.
Switch to manual mode	Command	Switches process to manual mode.
Continue recipe only at selected execution position	Command	Continues a recipe at the selected position.
Continue recipe at all execution positions	Command	Continues a recipe on every available position.
Skip active condition	Command	Skips an active condition.
		Only possible in the manual mode.
Duplicate recipe	Action	Created a copy of the recipe. The dialog for the input of a unique name and the description is opened.
		The copy of the recipe automatically gets the



status Prepared and can therefore be edited and started. The execution status (on page 221) of the duplicate is set to automatic.
When duplicating a recipe, a CEL entry is created.

# 8.7.4 Execute control recipe

Control recipes can be started:

- after selecting a control recipe in the list of the control recipes:
  - via click on button Start control recipe
  - via click on menu item **Start** in the context menu
- via click on symbol **Start control recipe** in the toolbar if the control recipe is opened

## PFC control recipe:

ontrol recipe: Control3 (In	execution)				
) 🛛 🗢 🗖 🖸 📕	🗙   Cii C2 Cii C8	5 🗸 🗹	👁 🖳 🍇 💧 🖍	h \$n \$n 🕅 🗋	
*Master (v1) M1	(v1) Master2 (v1)	Control3 X			
1			1		_
		7	7		
			$\bigvee$		
			<u> </u>		
		Stora	age Tank 1		
			fill		

# Matrix control recipe:

Matrix_M_2 ×     Matrix_M_2 ×					
	TestUnit Test4	TestUnit Test2			
1 @Step	+ TestUnit Test4	+ TestUnit Test2			
2 @Step		TestUnit Test2			
3 @Step					



#### **CHANGE VALUES**

If, for parameters in the master recipe, the **Changeable in the control recipe** option was activated, these values can be amended in the control recipe as long as the phase is not active yet. In this case a button for synchronization is displayed next to the value. A click on this button take over the defined value from the master recipe.

No more values can be changed in control recipes that have already been executed.

Symbol	Description
=	Value in the control recipe and in the master recipe match.
Equals sign	
$\diamond$	Value in the control recipe and in the master recipe are different.
Angle brackets.	
Arrows in opposite direction.	Click on button to apply the value from the master recipe. It overrides the value in the control recipe. Only active if the values in the control recipe and the master recipe do not match.

## MEANING OF THE SYMBOLS NEXT TO THE VALUES:

# 8.8 Validate recipe

Recipes can be checked for error during the engineering. To validate a recipe, click on the corresponding symbol in the toolbar of the recipe editor in Runtime (green tick - **Check recipe for errors**). With this the recipe is checked for functionality according to internal rules. The following is especially checked:

- Syntax (all lines connected, processable from begin to end, etc.)
- Variables
- Data Types
- Control Strategy: Linking of control strategies and value of the linked control strategy parameter to limits of the variable

The result of the check is displayed as pop-up in plain text. Found errors are also saved in the log file which can be analyzed with the Diagnosis Viewer.

Rules which must be adhered to during the engineering can be found in chapter Engineering rules for recipes (on page 134).



# Attention

Operations that are not connected at the time of validation are ignored during validation. Their content and processes are not checked.

# 8.9 Recipe execution

# 8.9.1 Commands

In the Runtime the following commands and actions are available:

- Commands effect the recipe process.
- Actions make it possible to edit recipes.

For a command to be accepted by the phase, the following requirements are necessary:

- ► The REE must run.
- The phase must be active.
- The phase must be in a state in which the command is allowed.

Via multi-selection the command can be sent to several phases in the same execution cycle.

Note: A distinction is made between recipe commands and phase commands:

- Recipe commands affect the execution of all phases active in a recipe, as well as the status of the recipe itself.
- Phase commands are only applied to the selected phase functions (multiple selection is possible).



Command	Description
Start recipe	Starts the recipe process.
Recipe pausing	Pauses the recipe process.
Recipe resuming	Resumes a paused recipe.
Hold recipe	Holds the recipe process.
Restart recipe	Restarts all active elements in the held recipe.
Stop recipe	Stops the recipe.
Recipe aborting	Aborts the recipe.
Phase pausing	Pauses the phase.
Resume phase	Resumes the paused phase.
Hold phase	Holds phase.
Restart phase	Restarts the held phase.
Escape phase	Abort phase.
	Only available in manual mode.
Switch to automatic mode	Switches the REE to automatic mode.
Switch to semi-automatic mode	Switches the REE to semi-automatic mode.
Switch to manual mode	Switches the REE to manual mode.
Continue recipe only at selected execution position	Continues a recipe at the selected position.
Continue recipe at all execution positions	Continues a recipe on every available position.
Skip active condition	Skips an active condition.
	Only possible in the manual mode.

# PERMITTED COMMANDS

Execution conditions apply to recipe commands and phase commands. For example, the control recipe can no longer be stopped if it has the status of Cancel.



Command		Start	Stop	Hold	Restart	Abort	Reset	Pause	Resume
Initial State	No Command End State	State Trans	sition Matrix						
Idle		Running							
Running	Complete		Stopping	Holding		Aborting		Pausing	
Complete							Idle		
Pausing	Paused		Stopping	Holding		Aborting			
Paused			Stopping	Holding		Aborting			Running
Holding	Holding		Stopping			Aborting			
Held			Stopping			Aborting			
Restarting	Running		Stopping	Holding		Aborting			
Stopping	Stopped					Aborting			
Stopped						Aborting	Idle		
Aborting	Aborted								
Aborted							Idle		

Note: The Reset command is not implemented in zenon Batch Control.

#### OVERVIEW OF COMMANDS IN BATCH CONTROL

Note: This overview has been taken from the ANSI/ISA-S88 standard (illustration 18).

Behavior for the Stop command

After a stop command, the phases, transitions and end parallel branch immediately go to stopped status, even if other elements are still waiting for a condition for stopping. Further subsequent commands such as Cancel are ignored. The Stopped status remains displayed.

#### **BEHAVIOR FOR THE "STOP" COMMAND**

After a stop command, transitions and end parallel branch immediately go to stopped status, even if other elements are still waiting for a condition for stopping. Further subsequent commands such as Cancel are ignored. The Stopped status remains displayed.

# 8.9.2 Recipe status

# STATUS FOR MASTER RECIPES

Master recipes can have the following states:



- Editable: In this state everything can be changed. Each new master recipe is created in this status.
- Test mode (on page 185): In this status the recipe behaves similar as a control recipe. The arrangement of the elements cannot be modified. It can be executed and all commands, actions, modes, etc. are available. You can also change all command tags for which option Changeable in the master recipe was activated.

Exception: If a phase is active at the moment, changes are not possible. Decisive for this is the status at clicking button OK. If the phase is active, the value changes are not taken over and an error message is displayed.

In test mode recipes can be executed consecutively several times. This is not the case for control recipes.

Changes from the Editor are only applied after reloading or after Runtime has been restarted, however only once the recipe has been ended.

Released (on page 187): In this status no changes to the recipe are possible.
 Note: Changes to the phases or to the reactions in the Editor are also not transferred to a master recipe. The master recipe always contains the status as at the time of approval. Exception: Changes to variable and function are not considered by these protection mechanisms. This can lead to a master recipe and all control recipes based on it becoming invalid. If e.g. the data type of a variable is changed from Bool to String, the validation function is no longer run through and the recipe can no longer be used as long as the error is not fixed in the Editor. Likewise the units themselves are not protected as they are used recipe-spanning. If a unit name is changed in the Editor, it immediately takes effect after reloading or a Runtime restart on all phases which are based on it.

To be able to release a master recipe, the recipe must be validated without errors. The validation (on page 208) is done automatically during the release and cannot be avoided. Control recipes can only be created from released recipes.

If a master recipe with status Release should be modified, you must create a copy of the master recipe via command duplicate. The copy gets status Editable.

# STATUS FOR CONTROL RECIPES

Control recipes can have the following states:

- Prepared: A newly created control recipe has this status. In this status, it can be started and command tags, for which option Changeable in control recipe was activated, can be changed.
- ▶ In execution: The control recipe was started and is processed. It remains in this status until it is Completed, Stoppedor Canceled. You can learn the exact state of the recipe from the execution status (on page 221).

In this status, command parameters for which the **Changeable in control recipe** option was activated can be changed.

Exception: If a phase is active at the moment, changes are not possible. Decisive for this is the status at clicking button OK. If the phase is active, the value changes are not taken over and an error message is displayed.



 Finished: The recipe reached its final state. It can no longer be restarted and it also cannot be changed. Changes to command tags are not possible. Finished control recipes can be duplicated and deleted.

# 8.9.3 Recipe Execution Engine (REE)

The REE (Recipe Execution Engine) executes recipes in the Runtime. You can start any number of recipes.

# Symbols and Color

The states during the process of a phase are displayed with the help of different symbols. Some symbols are also used for transitions and end parallel branch.





# SYMBOLS FOR THE INNER STATUS:

Symbol	Meaning	
	Phase starts.	
	Waiting for communication with the controller	
$\bigcirc$	Waiting for unit allocation. The unit of the phase is already being used in another recipe.	
0	Waiting for unit allocation expired.	
<b>K</b>	Waiting for exclusive execution. Another instance of the phase is active in the same recipe.	
	Writing of the initial tags.	
	Writing of the initial tags failed.	
$(\neq)$	Checking the input interlocking.	
<b>(</b>	Waiting for input lock expired.	
٢	Writing the value tags.	
<₿	Writing the value tags has expired.	
	Waiting for minimum execution period.	
	Phase: Waiting for phase done condition.	
	Transition: Waiting for transition condition.	
	End parallel branch: Wait until execution is finished in all branches.	
	Maximum waiting period expired.	
$\checkmark$	Waiting for following condition.	
J	Waiting time for following condition expired.	
٧	After the <b>Restart</b> command when waiting for the restart condition.	
()	After the Escape phase command when waiting for the escape condition.	

# SYMBOLS FOR ERRORS:



The symbols in the bottom left corner of the phase provide information on the error status of the phase. They can occur ion any desired combination with the symbols for the inner status.

Symbol	Meaning
	There is a communication error.
$\swarrow$	Communication error rectified, wait for acknowledgment of the communication error.
$\checkmark$	Communication error rectified (and acknowledged if required)
	PLC error.
	PLC error rectified.

## SYMBOLS FOR "ESCAPE PHASE":

The symbols in the bottom right corner of the phase provide information on the status when escaping from the phase.

Symbol	Meaning
(3)	Waiting for escape condition.
(	Escape condition met.

If an error occurs during a phase, the phase is marked as faulty until it is restarted.

#### STATUS

The execution status (on page 221) of **phases**, **transitions** and **end simultaneous sequence** is signaled in color:



Chathar	Color
Status	Color
Idle	White
In execution	green
Executed	blue
Stopping	Two colors:
	▶ yellow
	<ul> <li>Original color</li> </ul>
Stopped	yellow
Pausing	Two colors:
	▶ orange
	<ul> <li>Original color</li> </ul>
Paused	orange
Holding	Two colors:
	▶ gray
	<ul> <li>Original color</li> </ul>
Held	gray
Aborting	Two colors:
	▶ red
	<ul> <li>Original color</li> </ul>
Aborted	red
Restarting	Two colors:
	▶ green
	<ul> <li>Original color</li> </ul>
Force	Violet border
(phases or transitions only)	
Timeout	red border
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

# Create recipe image

During batch operation, all recipes that are currently being executed can be saved with all recipe data in a recipe image (Image). Saving is possible as follows:

- When Runtime is closed: an image of all running recipes is created automatically.
- Cyclical: in a freely-definable time period between 30 and 86400 seconds, a recipe image is written (optional)



▶ When activating a phase: if a phase is activated, arecipe image is written (optional).

These methods can also be combined as desired. It can thus be ensured that Batch operation can also be continued correctly at any time in the event of errors.

# ENDING THE RECIPE IMAGE IN RUNTIME

If the Trigger end of Runtime event is triggered, the ending of Runtime is prevented until the Batch Control module has backed up all data. A process screen is created that represents the initial status for the restart. Likewise, it is ensured that the parameters of the **Write set value** action arrive at the control unit securely. Internally the phase is paused only when the writing confirmation from the driver ensued. This recipe image contains the images of the REEs, the order of the allocations and all reactions that are needed when restarting. Find out more information in the chapter Exit and restart Runtime.

# CYCLIC WRITING OF A RECIPE IMAGE

A recipe image can also be written cyclically during Runtime. As soon as **Activate cyclic writing** is activated, a recipe image is created in the given cycle.

To activate cyclical writing:

- 1. Navigate to the Recipe image group in the properties of the Batch Control module.
- 2. Activate the Activate cyclic writing property.
- 3. In the **Cycle time** [s] property, create the time period for the writing of the recipe image; the minimum time period is 30 seconds.

With cyclical writing, the last two image files are always retained. Older ones are deleted. Writing is a two-stage process:

- 1. The recipe image is written to the **TemporaryImg.REE** file.
- 2. If this was successful, the next version number is issued and the temporary file is renamed to the new version.

With cyclically-created images, all recipes that are currently running are saved in the recipe image. This ensures that the recipe is appropriate to the execution status on restarting. To do this, the recipe from the recipe image overwrites the recipe in Runtime when restarting. It is only possible to restart if the recipe in question still exists and is still in an execution status. The recipe is not restarted if the recipe has already ended after the recipe image has been created.

# **RECIPE IMAGE WHEN ACTIVATING A PHASE**

A recipe image can also be created when activating a phase. To create a recipe image each time a phase is activated:

1. Go, in the properties of the Batch Control module, to the Recipe image group.



#### 2. Activate the property Write recipe image when activating a phase

A recipe image is written in Runtime each time a phase is activated.

### SAVING AND RESTORING

REE images are stored in the project folder with the following naming convention: **Batch[Version-Hex].REE** 

With the file extension .**REE**, image files are read in when Runtime is started and the most recent version is identified. The most recent version is the recipe image to be loaded and remains as a file after restarting. All other files with the extension .**REE** are deleted.

# **Behavior of elements in Runtime**

The basic principle is: Phases and all elements that follow them (transition, end simultaneous sequence, start simultaneous sequence, allocation) remain active until the next phase becomes active. Exception: A manual skip is carried out.

#### PHASES

#### ALL PHASES PAUSED

In manual mode, it is possible to assign all phases the status paused.

For example: The branch continues to be gone through before the end simultaneous sequence after the end of this. The active element is thus after the end simultaneous sequence and before the next phase. All phases before the end simultaneous sequence have the status paused. These phases are now only set to hold and then to restart. The other phases remain paused. If the restarted phase is ended, there is only one active element. If this is activated with the Next step, then no active element is present any more. The end simultaneous sequence element remains paused however and does not switch through.

**Solution:** Continuation of the paused phases.

#### PAUSE AND RESUME

The following applies to pausing and resuming:

- Switching from manual mode to automatic: All paused phases are continued.
- Pausing and resuming with active element: With a Continue command, active elements are not continued. Active elements are only continued with the Continue phase command, as well as the Continue recipe only at selected execution position and Continue recipe at all execution positions commands.



- If a phase is paused in manual mode and the execution mode is switched to automatic, the phase is continued. Switching to automatic execution mode implicitly executes a Continue phase command.
  - A Pause phase command, followed by a Pause recipe and Continue recipe command puts the paused phase back into the status of running.
- ► The recipe status changes to running after global pausing and resumption. However phases with active elements remain paused and the active element remains unchanged.
- ► The recipe status remains as running after local pausing and resumption. The recipe is resumed at the active elements. This also applies if the active element has been moved.

### BRANCHES

The following applies in branchings:

- As long as the left transition does not have a value, the right transition is ignored.
- If the transition condition is met for both transitions, the left branch is selected.

# **STOPPING ELEMENTS**

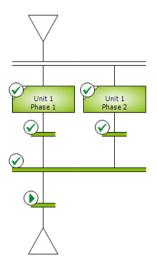
If an **end simultaneous sequence** is stopped, it becomes inactive immediately and does not react to any more REE commands such as cancel. Therefore is also does not change to the status aborted after a cancel command. The same applies to transitions. In contrast, phases may wait after stopping for further conditions to be met.

# TRANSITIONS

- Transitions remain active until a subsequent phase or the end of the recipe has been reached. This also applies if a transition is followed by an End simultaneous sequence and a further transition.
- ► In branches, impulses for a transition are ignored for as long as the transition to the left of the transition concerned does not have a valid value.



Transitions are deactivated with hold and restart. The active element is activated again in manual or semi-automatic mode.



# ACTIVE ELEMENT AND JUMP TARGETS

Command	Description	
Continue	If an object is paused and an active element is located after it, continue has the same effect as Next step. This also includes jumps.	
	At a phase command the command only effects a jump in the same branch.	
Stop	Depending on the object:	
	Stop phase: removes execution positions in the branches	
	Stop recipe: removes all execution positions	
Pause	Has now effects for jump targets. Already defined targets remain.	
Others	Always causes the deletion of the jumps.	
	For a phase command only the jump in the area of the phase is deleted.	

# Mode and mode change

The REE can run in three modes:

- ► Automatic: The recipe runs entirely automatically.
- Semi-automatic: The recipe is executed manually. Conditions cannot be jumped.
- Manual: Each step in the recipe or operation is executed manually; conditions that are being waited for can be skipped.



To execute a recipe manually or semi-automatically, the operation types (on page 223) **Step-by-step execution** of the recipe and **Jump** can be used.

When switching to automatic mode, all execution positions are removed. Global commands are only executed in branches that have no execution positions.

# Information

To react on serious events, you can change the mode during the running process via reaction type (on page 42) influencing the recipe.

# The execution status

The following statuses are possible for recipes:



Status	Description
Idle	The REE is in idle state.
In execution	When starting a control recipe, it changes to the status running. However, individual elements in the recipe can have a different status.
Executed	A recipe changes to Completed status as soon as:
	As soon as the end element has been reached in a PFC recipe or
	in a matrix recipe, all phases have been fully processed
	In this status execution is not possible.
Pausing	After a <b>Pause</b> recipe command, the recipe is in the pausing status. It remains in this status until all phases in execution are in the paused status. Only then does the recipe get the status paused.
Paused	All active phases of the recipe are paused or held. Within the phase the process stops at:
	<ul> <li>Waiting for unit allocation.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Check for parallel execution.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Waiting for input interlocking.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Waiting for phase done condition.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Waiting for following condition.</li> </ul>
Holding	After a <b>hold</b> recipe, the recipe is in held status. Only once all active phases are in the held status does the recipe also switch to the held status.
Held	All active phases of the recipe are held. Within the phase the process stops at:
	<ul> <li>Waiting for unit allocation.</li> </ul>
	Check for parallel execution.
	<ul> <li>Waiting for input interlocking.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Waiting for phase done condition.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Waiting for following condition.</li> </ul>
Restarting	After the <b>Restart recipe</b> command, the recipe is in the <b>Restarting</b> status. Only once all previously-held phases in the recipe are started does the recipe status also switch to in execution.
Stopping	After a <b>Stop recipe</b> command, the recipe is in Stopping status. Only once all active phases are in stopped status does the recipe status switch to stopped.
Stopped	All active phases in the recipe have been stopped. A stopped control recipe cannot be continued again or restarted.



Aborting	After an Abort recipe command, the recipe is in the aborting status. Only once all active phases are in aborted status does the recipe status switch to aborted.
Aborted	All active phases in the recipe have been aborted. An aborted control recipe cannot be continued again or restarted.
Prepared	Prepared for execution.

# Step-by-step execution of a recipe and jumps in the recipe

# **STEP-BY-STEP EXECUTION OF A RECIPE**

A recipe can be executed step-by-step if:

- The recipe is in either semi-automatic or manual mode and
- The status of the recipe is running.

For the step-by-step execution the execution is paused as soon as an element is finished with its execution. The holding is done via the command Pause to the concerned execution path. As soon as all active elements in this path have reached the status of paused, the active element is marked by a red arrow. Operations are treated like all other objects of a recipe.

The execution is resumed with:

- a selective step: selection of the corresponding arrow (green)
- a global step: all positions with arrows for possible resuming are started

# COMMUNICATION ERROR WITH STEP-BY-STEP EXECUTION

If an communication error occurs with a phase whilst this is waiting for an active element, the active element is no longer displayed until the problem is rectified. However, if in the meantime, the execution is switched to automatic mode, then the phase is no longer paused and must be continued. This also applies if a switch to manual or semi-automatic mode is made again.



### COMMANDS

### **GLOBAL COMMANDS**

For global commands all execution positions are deleted as the execution cannot be resumed from there.

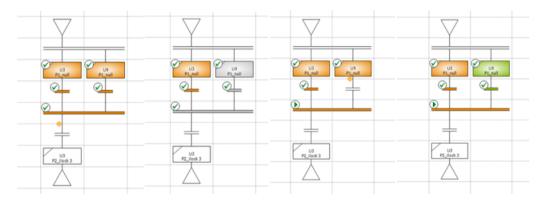
**Exceptions:** Pause and Resume. The execution positions remain as they are.

#### PHASE COMMANDS

- ▶ Hold for a phase: The active element is deleted from the execution path of the phase.
- ▶ Resume: If there is an active element, a selective next step is executed in this execution path.

#### SPECIAL CASES:

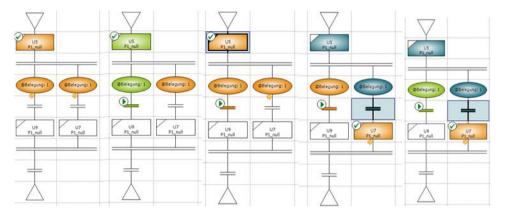
# PHASE COMMAND **HOLD** AND **RESTART** IN A PARALLEL BRANCH FOR ACTIVE END PARALLEL BRANCH



If you hold in this example (images from left to right) a parallel branch and restart it, then you will reach after a step-by-step execution the already paused **end parallel branch**. To resume the execution from here, the left phase must receive command Resume.



# ONLY ONE PATH IN A PARALLEL BRANCH WITH AN ACTIVE PHASE BEFORE STEP-BY-STEP EXECUTION



If, in a parallel branch with a phase before, only one path is executed completely and waiting is taking place in one of the other parallel branchEs (phase before is running), no active element is displayed in the parallel branch. To get them in the other path, the phase must be paused with a phase command. After that it is possible to execute the path completely.

However, if the parallel branch with the active element continues to be executed, the phase before the parallel branch is deactivated. The left path thus remains paused and without an active element. As there is not active phase, the execution can only be resumed with a global Pause and Resume.

# JUMP

Jump means to move from one position to another, distant position during execution in order to continue the execution there.

To jump:

- 1. Select an active element with the mouse cursor.
- 2. Move it to one of the offered targets.
- 3. Execute Continue recipe only at selected execution position.

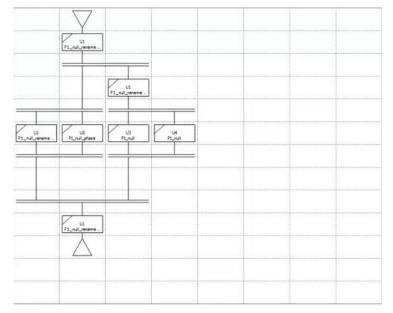
All active elements in front of the source pointer are deactivated and the object after the target is activated.

If a jump is registered for which source and target are analogously the same (jumps over lines, jump targets or end branch objects), this jump is ignored and a simple step is executed.

# JUMPING IN SIMULTANEOUS SEQUENCES

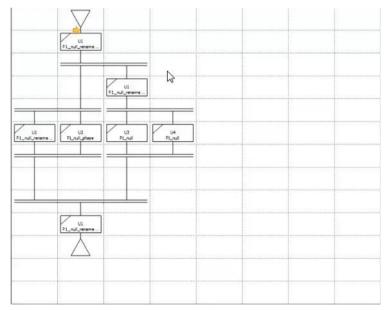
If, in parallel sequences, a jump is made in first parallel branch via the phase, then the first phase before the parallel branch is deactivated. Therefore no phase is active. Phases cannot be skipped if this means that no phase would be active in the recipe. The following behavior when skipping leads to an error:



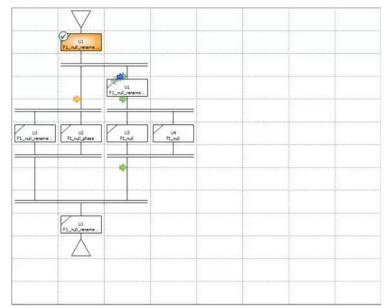


# ► Recipe with simultaneous sequence

• A global step activates the phase before begin parallel sequence.

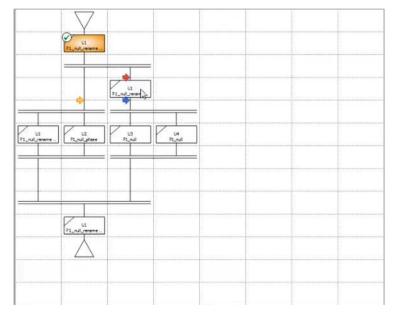






# • After the next step, the active element is before the phase in the simultaneous sequence.

• The active element is moved behind this phase.

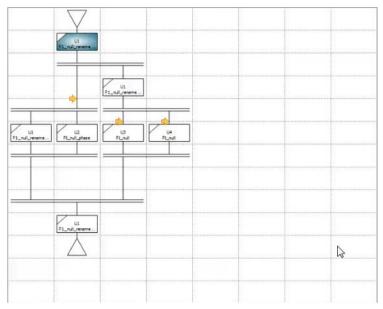




**Rule when jumping:** Objects before a begin parallel sequence become inactive as soon as objects become active after this.

Thus the first phase becomes inactive when jumping. The skipped phase in the parallel branch never became active, nor did the following phases.

Thus no phase is still active in the recipe:



# Process of a phase in detail

A phase is always processed sequentially after the same pattern. To break down the exact process, you also need a following condition. For this display we use a transition as following condition. We give the phase the name **Phase 1**. You can find additional special process behavior with following condition in chapter Following condition (on page 231).





Phase/Transition	Event
Phase is activated	Phase activated
All variables of the phase are registered at the drivers.	
Unit allocation is started and waiting period unit allocation is started.	If the unit allocation was not successful in the first try: Unit allocation not possible
Optional: Unit allocation possible within the waiting period.	Waiting period unit allocation exceeded
Check is started whether phase isn't already executed. This can happen if the phase is already active in a parallel branch or if the unit allocation was skipped manually and the phase is already executed in another recipe.	Phase started multiple times
Start writing of the initial parameters and phases.	Phase started
Check of the input interlocking is started and Waiting period input interlocking is started.	If the checking of the input interlocking was not successful in the first try: Input interlocking blocked
Optional: Condition of the input interlocking not TRUE within the waiting period.	Waiting period input interlocking exceeded
Writing the value tags.	When all value tags were written: Finished writing value tags



Unit 1 Phase 1	
Checking of the phase-done condition is started and time for Minimum execution duration and Maximum execution duration	
is started.	
Optional: Phase-don condition fulfilled but <b>Minimum execution</b> duration not reached.	
Optional: Condition of the <b>Phase-done condition</b> not TRUE within the <b>Maximum execution duration</b> .	Maximum execution period exceeded
Phase-done condition is TRUE and minimum execution duration is reached or exceeded.	Phase finished
Waiting period following condition is started.	
Transition is activated	
All variables of the transition are registered at the drivers.	
Optional: Following condition not within waiting period TRUE	Waiting period following condition exceeded
The transition condition is checked.	
The payt phase is activated. The following condition can be	
The next phase is activated. The following condition can be composed from several objects (e.g. transition + unit allocation). No till the next phase is reached (or the end of the recipe), the following condition counts as fulfilled.	



Unit 1 Phase 1	
Transition condition is TRUE.	
All events of the phase are deactivated.	
All variables of the phase are signed off from the drivers.	
All variables of the transitions are signed off from the drivers.	
The phase is deactivated.	
The transition is deactivated.	

# RULE FOR VALUES OF TRANSITIONS

If the condition of a transition is TRUE whilst the transition is active, the transition is marked as ended. If its value should change to FALSE later, the execution of the recipe is not influenced.

# GLOBAL PAUSING AND CONTINUATION IF THERE IS A COMMUNICATION ERROR

If a phase is paused and there is a communication error, this cannot be simply continued. Phase commands are prevented, recipe commands are circumvented. If the recipe is paused, a Continue recipe recipe command can be sent. As a result of this, the recipe changes to the status running, but the execution path of the phase concerned remains unaffected.

# **Following condition**

Once a phase has been executed, it remains active whilst the recipe process is continued. Only once the next phase is activated or the end of the recipe has been reached is the phase deactivated. This is marked as a **following condition**. This is also applicable if, between the phase and the following phase (or the end of the recipe), there are other elements such as a **transition** or **end simultaneous sequence**. This behavior ensures that the unit allocation remains after execution of a phase up to the start of the next phase.

# **Escape phase**

It is possible to exit a phase during execution. Execution is then continued after the phase without having to run through the outstanding steps of the phase. It is only possible to exit a phase in manual mode. In the Editor, it is also possible to configure a condition in the **Condition transient status/Escape condition** property.

It is also possible to exit if the phase is in this status:



- In execution
- Pausing
- Paused
- Holding
- ► Held
- Restarting

If the exit command has been reached, the current execution step is canceled and checking of the **Escape condition** starts immediately. If the condition exiting is met, all necessary steps are instigated so that the object changes back to the status of running:

- Restarting: The normal procedure is continued from the Wait until the recipe has the status "running". That means: None of the steps between instigating the exit and Wait until the recipe has the status "running" are executed.
- In execution: The normal procedure continues to be executed after the phase or the phase waits for the pause condition to be met.

No more transient conditions are checked from the start of the check for the exit of a phase. Only after a switch to stopping or aborting is the checking of Escape condition interrupted.

Behavior when exiting from the phase depending on the execution status:

- Exit from the phase from holding or from held: A restart is only carried out internally when switching back to running. The execution data is retained with the object. This also applies if a restart is carried out during the checking Escape condition.
- Exit from the phase if the recipe status is not running or restarting: If there is a different recipe status, once the condition has been met, waiting continues until the recipe status changes to running or restarting. This also makes it possible to exit with a different recipe status.

For example: The recipe has the status held. The exit action is carried out for a phase. Then the end of the exit is only reached if the user executes a global restart command. This also makes it possible to exit if the recipe has the status held, without using the normal mechanism for a restart.

# Information

If an error occurs with communication to the PLC, the check of the exit conditions is postponed until the error has been rectified.

# SUPPRESSION OF REACTIONS WHEN EXITING

Most events for the status change and mode change are suppressed whilst a phase is exited. The checking of the Escape condition has priority and the status change is also carried out without the condition being checked. Exceptions to this are stopping and aborting, as well as End Runtime



triggered and Runtime restart, because these have a higher priority than Exit without phase. These events are triggered, as well as the event for Linked variable invalid.

# **Restart phase**

Phases can be restarted. In doing so, all connected active objects are deactivated, including connected simultaneous sequences. A phase always carries out a series of event for Activation, Start and Finished, regardless of the number of restarts. Events that have already been carried out are skipped on restarting. Transient conditions are only checked after the start event.

#### DEACTIVATION

At the restart of a phase, all active objects are deactivated in principle, however only if they are linked. Isolated active objects are not deactivated.

#### SEQUENCE OF DEACTIVATION

The deactivation starts from the object which has been active the longest. After the restart this object is also going to be activated. If this object is deactivated, it also deactivates all branches to which it can establish a connection via an active object.

#### **ISOLATED BRANCH**

A branch is isolated if it is not connected to another branch via an active object. The deactivation only takes place between connected branches. As long as an object does not have status Completed, there is not active connection to the following object.

# **RESTART OF SELECTED PHASES**

One or more phases can be selected and restarted. For the selection of several phases, they must be in separate branches.

The oldest object is restarted in the selected branch. With this all active objects in the connected branches are deactivated.

### **GLOBAL RESTART**

The global restart carries out a restart for all phases. The restart is done for the oldest active object and with this all connected, active objects are deactivated. All remaining active objects are in an isolated branch. Here also the oldest object is restarted until all active objects were dealt with.



### Secure writing of the command parameters

The command parameters (initial parameters and value parameters) are written to the PLC securely. The waiting time can be configured in the Editor.

#### PROCEDURE

The following applies when writing command parameters:

- 1. Waiting occurs until all parameters to be written as inverted have a value
  - If this is not possible within the configured waiting period, 3 attempts are made.
  - If there are still parameters with no value, no parameter is written, not even those with a value.
- 2. If all attempts have been unsuccessful, the Command parameter without value event is triggered.
- 3. Command parameters are written.
- 4. The actual values are compared to the written values.

These are read in again after the parameter values have been written. If the values read after the set waiting time do not correspond to the written values, all parameters are written again. There is a maximum of 3 repetitions.

- 5. If secure writing is unsuccessful, a communication failure event is triggered. That means:
  - The error must be acknowledged.
  - The phase must be put back to the status "running".
  - Writing is restarted once continued.
  - The execution of the function is restarted in the event of a restart.
- 6. The procedure can be paused, held etc. using commands whilst secure writing is being carried out. If the phase has the status Paused and it is then continued, the writing is also restarted. In doing so, the values to be inverted are recalculated for a command parameter to be toggled.
- 7. Writing of the command parameters can also be skipped.
- 8. If Runtime is ended whilst writing the command parameters, these are rewritten when Runtime is started. Parameters to be toggled are recalculated.

Duration, start time and end time of the writing are displayed in the tooltip of the phase.

#### CONFIGURING THE WAITING PERIOD

To configure the waiting period for secure writing:

1. Navigate to the General/Protected writing group in the properties of the Batch Control module.



# 2. Enter the desired waiting period in the Time out for protected writing property.

# Information

The waiting period includes all waiting processes in the whole write process:

- Waiting for values for all parameters to be written.
- Waiting for confirmation of the written parameters.
- Waiting for reading of the variables.

If the default value of 20 seconds is used, all wait processes within 20 seconds must be concluded positively. If the waiting period has expired without a positive result, writing is started over.

# **Exit and restart Runtime**

# ACTIONS ON RESTARTING

Actions can be predefined for restarting Runtime after closing. These can be defined for:

- Restart after normal shutdown of the Runtime
- Restart on system failure

One of the following actions can be selected for each of the two properties:

- ▶ Hold recipe: The complete recipe is held after restarting.
- Recipe pausing: The complete recipe is paused after restarting.
- Retain recipe status: After restarting, the recipe is set to the same status as before closing.

# STATUS CHANGE

After restarting, an attempt is made to execute the configured status change. To do this, the corresponding command must also be executable. The status Restarting for recipes and phases is handled in the same way as in execution. That means:

- ▶ Paused is set for: In execution, pausing and restarting.
- ▶ Held is set for: In execution, pausing, paused, holding and restarting.

Transient conditions are not checked and events are not set. Therefore the status in the recipe can be brought in line with the status of the equipment, without sending events to the equipment for the status change.



# **IMAGE FILE**

At closing the Runtime an image file (on page 216) of the running recipe is created. It contains the images of the REEs, the order of the allocation and all reactions which are needed for the restart.

#### ALLOCATIONS

After the restart the allocations match the state before the finishing. It is saved who allocated a unit and who forced an allocation in which order. If a recipe cannot be restarted (e.g. because of failed validation), the allocations for this recipe are removed.

#### REACTIONS

Reactions which were triggered by the process are also incorporated in the image if they are active. They are then executed after the REE is restarted. This guarantees that the reaction is always executed as a whole either before the image file is created or after the restart.

The Exit Runtime reaction is always executed and can never be incorporated in the image.

### SYNCHRONOUS WRITING

The REE manages the confirmation for all variables whose write set value should be executed synchronously. The time out for this is defined by the time within which the Runtime must be closed. For each write acknowledgment the time out is restarted. This restart is logged in the LOG file.

Variables which don't access a driver are always written without an acknowledgment even if an acknowledgment is requested. Internal drivers do not support acknowledgments.

# ALLOCATE TAG

As during the start of the Runtime all drivers are also started, it is possible that they do not provide valid values if they are needed at the restart. During the restart it is not waited for the value update. This does not ensure that the value is written as expected. If no value is available, the alternate value is used.

There is a wait for the values of internal drivers if they are available within 2 cycles.

# CHECKING FOR A COMMUNICATION ERROR

A check is also made for communication errors when restarted if this has been configured (on page 294).



# 8.10 Manage recipes

The entire recipe management is done in the Runtime with the help of one or several screens of type Batch Control. Due to suitable filter settings you can achieve already filtered views for master recipes or control recipes.

In the screen different control elements (buttons, lists, editors) are available for different tasks. The screen can also be configured so that it is divided into three main areas which can be also used completely independently from one another:

- Area master recipes (on page 238): Consists of a list and buttons for managing. The area can be used completely independently.
- Area control recipe (on page 242): Consists of a list and buttons for managing. The area can be used only together with the **list of the master recipes** as a master recipe must be selected first before the appertaining control recipes are displayed in the list.
- Recipe editors: Depending on the set recipe type the PFC editor (on page 143) or the matrix editor (on page 178) is used.



# 8.10.1 Manage master recipes

# LIST AND LIST FORMATING

List/action	Description
Master recipes list	In this list all master recipes can be displayed. The display can be limited by filters to an individual selection.
	The filtering can be preset in the zenon Editor in the screen switch function (on page 63). Filtering in Runtime is also possible. These filter settings are not saved in Runtime. This means that the filters must be entered again when called up again. A permanent pre-setting of the filter is only possible with configuration in the zenon Editor.
	All commands are also possible in the context menu of the list. The commands for list management can be called from the header of the list. The commands for recipe management can be called at editing one or more recipes.
	The recipes in the list cannot be edited directly in the list. Renaming, changing the description or changing the recipe status is only possible with the corresponding commands.
	Hint for ideal configuration of the list:
	The list can be designed diversely concerning content and look:
	Content: The displayed columns (on page 94) can be selected, the column format (on page 98) (column width, alignment, label) can be changed and you can define filters (on page 68). These settings can be edited in Editor and Runtime.
	Graphics: At the settings of the list in the Editor you can find diverse setting possibilities in areas Representation, Scroll bars and Fill. With these properties you can even design the list ready for touch operation. Longer texts can also be displayed in lists over several lines using the Automatic word wrap property. The line height must be amended manually in order to do this.
	<ul> <li>If you want to edit the list directly using the monitor, activate the Multi-Touch functionality.</li> <li>You can find detailed information in relation to this in the Configure interactions chapter.</li> </ul>



# ACTIONS FOR LIST MANAGEMENT

Action	Description
Column selection master recipe	Opens a dialog in order to determine which columns should be displayed (on page 94). Attention: These changes are discarded when the screen is called up again. A permanent definition is only possible in the zenon Editor.
Format columns master recipe	Opens a dialog to edit the column settings (on page 98). Attention: These changes are discarded when the screen is called up again. A permanent definition is only possible in the zenon Editor.

# ACTIONS FOR RECIPE MANAGEMENT

Action	Description
New master recipe	Creates a new and empty master recipe in status Editable. The dialog (on page 138) for entering a unique name and a free description is displayed. The uniqueness of a name is also checked in the zenon network. Depending on the licensing, there may also be the possibility to select the recipe type: Matrix recipe (on page 178) or PFC recipe (on page 142). If only one of these recipe types is licensed, the licensed recipe type is fixedly set. The selected recipe type cannot be changed afterwards. When creating a master recipe, a CEL entry is created.
Create new version	Master recipes can also be versioned. In doing so, a copy of an approved or obsolete report is created. This copy is in edit mode and contains a unique version number. The new recipe can be edited, but not renamed. Individual versions, including the source recipe itself, can be deleted.
Duplicate master recipe	Only active if exactly one recipe is selected. Created a copy of the selected recipe. At the creation of the copy, the version of the recipe saved on the hard disk is used. If the recipe is just edited in another computer and the changes have not yet been saved, the changes are not applied. The dialog for the input of a unique name and the description is opened. The copy of the recipe automatically receives status Editable and can be edited further. When duplicating a recipe, a CEL entry is created.



Export selected as XML         Exports the selected master recipe as an	n XML file.
Import XML Imports the selected XML file as master	recipe.
Rename master recipeOnly active if exactly one master recipe The dialog for the input of a unique nam Recipes can only be renamed if they are Also use this function in order to change recipe.When renaming a recipe, a CEL entry is of	ne and the description is opened. in status Editable. e the description of the control
Open master recipe         Opens the selected master recipe in the Recipe editor exists in the screen.           opened in a separate tab of the recipe e	Each selected master recipe is
Release master recipe       Changes the master recipe status of the Only recipes without errors can be releat validation (on page 208), you must first to Only recipes in status Test mode and Released recipes can no longer be edited created from released recipes. For details about the states see chapter (on page 136).	sed. If error occur during the fix them. Editable can be released. d. Control recipes can only be
When releasing a recipe, a CEL entry is c	reated.



Test master recipe	Changes the master recipe status of the selected recipes to Test mode. Only faultless recipes can be switched to test mode. If error occur during the validation (on page 208), you must first fix them. Recipes in the test mode can be executed but no longer reengineered. For details about the states see chapter Recipe types and recipe states (on page 136).
Edit master recipe	Changes the master recipe status of the selected recipes to Editable. In this status, recipes can again be edited completely. Only recipes in Test mode can be set back to Editable.
Highlight master recipe as outdated	Changes the status of the recipe to outdated. The recipe can no longer be edited or approved. No control recipe can be created on the basis of this recipe.
New control recipe	Opens the dialog (on page 203) for entering a unique name and a description for the control recipe. The uniqueness of the name is also checked in the zenon network. The name must only be unique within the master recipes. Control recipes which are based on other master recipes may have the same name. The uniqueness within module Batch Control is achieved by always referencing the master recipe name and the control recipe name.
	When creating a control recipe, a CEL entry is created.

# ACTIONS FOR FILLING THE CONTROL RECIPE LIST

As each control recipe can be executed only once, we assume that there are very many control recipes. As during the loading of the list of the control recipes each control recipe is opened on the hard disk, it makes sense to not display all control recipes. Control recipes are therefore not automatically opened by default. They must be called up manually and via filters:

- 1. Provide the fitting filter options.
- 2. Select the desired master recipe.
- 3. Click on button **Display associated control recipes in list**.
- 4. All control recipes appropriate to the filters and the selection are displayed in the list of the control recipes.



Action/filter	Description
currently executed control recipes	Opens control recipes that are currently being executed. Control recipe status: In execution
prepared control recipes	Opens control recipes which are prepared for execution. Control recipe status: Prepared
finished control recipes	Opens control recipes which have already been executed. Control recipe status: Executed
Outdated control recipe	Opens control recipes that have been marked as outdated. Control recipe status: Outdated
Show related control recipes in list	Displays all control recipes that are based on the selected master recipe and that comply with the set filter criteria.

# 8.10.2 Manage control recipes

LIST	AND	LIST	FORMATING
	/		

List/action	Description	
Control recipe list	In this list all control recipes can be displayed. The display can be limited by filters to an individual selection.	
	Per default the list is empty. The following must be the case for the list to be filled:	
	<ul> <li>Master recipes must be selected</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>The filters: currently-executed control recipes, prepared control recipes and completed control recipes must be set</li> </ul>	
	click button display associated control recipes in list	
	In addition to the filters mentioned above, you can filter the list itself.The filtering can be preset in the zenon Editor in the screen switch function (on page 63). Filtering in Runtime is also possible. These filter settings are not saved in Runtime. This means that the filters must be entered again when called up again. A permanent pre-setting of the filter is only possible with configuration in the zenon Editor.	



All commands are also possible in the context menu of the list. The commands for list management can be called from the header of the list. The commands for recipe management can be called at editing one or more recipes. The recipes in the list cannot be edited directly in the list. Renaming, changing the description or starting the recipes is only possible with the corresponding commands.
Hint for ideal configuration of the list
The list can be designed diversely concerning content and look:
Content: The displayed columns (on page 94) can be selected, the column format (on page 98) (column width, alignment, label) can be changed and you can define filters (on page 68). These settings can be edited in Editor and Runtime.
Graphics: At the settings of the list in the Editor you can find diverse setting possibilities in areas Representation, Scroll bars and Fill. With these properties you can even design the list ready for touch operation. Longer texts can also be displayed in lists over several lines using the Automatic word wrap property. The line height must be amended manually in order to do this.
If you want to edit the list directly using the monitor, activate the Multi-Touch functionality. You can find detailed information in relation to this in the Configure interactions chapter.



# ACTIONS FOR LIST MANAGEMENT

Action	Description
Column selection control recipe	Opens a dialog in order to determine which columns should be displayed (on page 94). Attention: These changes are discarded when the screen is called up again. A permanent definition is only possible in the zenon Editor.
Format columns control recipe	Opens a dialog to edit the column settings (on page 98). Attention: These changes are discarded when the screen is called up again. A permanent definition is only possible in the zenon Editor.

# ACTIONS FOR RECIPE MANAGEMENT

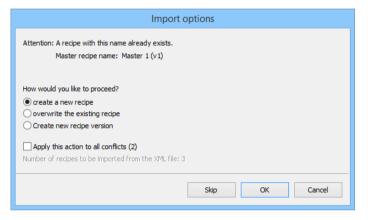
Action	Description
Duplicate control recipe	Only active if exactly one recipe is selected. Created a copy of the selected recipe. At the creation of the copy, the version of the recipe saved on the hard disk is used. If the recipe is just edited in another computer and the changes have not yet been saved, the changes are not applied. The dialog for the input of a unique name and the description is opened.
	The copy of the recipe automatically gets the status Prepared and can therefore be edited and started. The execution status (on page 221) of the duplicate is set to automatic.
	When duplicating a recipe, a CEL entry is created.
Delete control recipe	Deletes the selected recipes irrevocably. If the recipe is opened on another computer for editing, it is automatically closed there. Deleting is only possible if all selected recipes are not executed (control recipe status: In execution). First they must be finished, stopped or canceled.
	If recipes must not be deleted - e.g. in an FDA-regulated environment - it is recommended that this button is not configured or that it is given an appropriate <b>Authorization level</b> . A CEL entry is created when a recipe is deleted.
Rename control recipe	Only active if exactly one control recipe was selected. The dialog for the input of a unique name and the description is opened. Recipes can only be renamed if they are in status Prepared. Also use this function in order to change the description of the control recipe.
Open control recipe	Opens the selected control recipes in the recipe editor if screen element Recipe editor exists in the screen. Each selected control recipe is opened in a separate tab of the recipe editor.
Start control recipe	Starts the selected control recipe in the set execution mode. The recipes are executed automatically at the Server. It is not necessary that the



	recipe is opened in the recipe editor.
--	--

# 8.10.3 Import recipes

When importing a recipe from an XML file, the following dialog is displayed in the event of naming conflicts:



Select how you want to proceed in the dialog:



Parameter	Description
Master recipe name/control recipe/operation	Name of the recipe that is already in use.
Create a new recipe	Creates a new recipe with the name and increments the number at the end of the name.
Overwrite the existing recipe	Overwrites the existing recipe with the name.
Create a new recipe version	Creates a new version of the recipe with the name.
	Note: Only active if Versioning active has been selected in the Editor
Apply this action to all conflicts	The selected option is applied to all pending conflicts. The number of conflicts is shown in brackets.
Number of recipes to be imported from the XML file	Number of recipes that are contained in the selected XML file.
	Number of recipes that are to be imported in the selected XML file.
Skip	Skips the importation of the currently-displayed recipe.
ОК	Accepts the selection and shows the options for the next naming conflict or closes the dialog.
Cancel	Cancels the action and closes the dialog.

If there is a naming conflict there may, under certain circumstances, regardless of the status of the recipe that already exists, not be all important options available:

Recipe type	Status of the existing recipe.	Possible options
Master recipe	Edit mode	<ul> <li>Create a new recipe</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Overwrite the existing recipe</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Create a new recipe version</li> </ul>



	Released	<ul> <li>Create a new recipe</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Create a new recipe version</li> </ul>
	Outdated	<ul> <li>Create a new recipe</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Create a new recipe version</li> </ul>
Control recipe	Prepared	<ul> <li>Create a new recipe</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Overwrite the existing recipe</li> </ul>
	In execution	<ul> <li>Create a new recipe</li> </ul>
	Executed	<ul> <li>Create a new recipe</li> </ul>
Operation	Edit mode	<ul> <li>Create a new recipe</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Overwrite the existing recipe</li> </ul>
	Released	<ul> <li>Create a new recipe</li> </ul>

**Note**: Control recipes cannot be imported to existing master recipes if the version number of the master recipe is different. The attendant master recipe from the control recipe to be imported must have the same version number as the existing master recipe.

# 8.10.4 Saving on the hard disk and backup scenarios

# **MASTER RECIPES**

Each master recipe has a unique ID under which it is saved on the hard disk with file extension .MR; e.g. 9.MR

Each recipe conforms to one file. The ID of the recipe can be read from the list of the master recipes. For this column **Master recipe ID** must be visible.

The folder for the master recipes is a sub folder of Runtime folder:

\RT\FILES\zenon\system\BatchRecipes

For the recipe management file Recipe.unique is responsible which is located in the same folder. It makes sure that the recipe names are unique.

Note: If you delete a recipe manually via the file explorer and therefore outside of the Runtime and the module Batch Control, you must delete file Recipe.unique for its content to be correct again. For example if you delete a control recipe manually, you cannot delete the respective master recipe in module Batch Control as the control recipe still exists according to module Batch Control. Only after a reinitialization of file Recipe.unique can the master recipe also be deleted.



#### **BACKING UP MASTER RECIPES**

The .MR files - and with this all master recipes - can be backed up at any time. For example you can use function File operations.

#### **RESTORING MASTER RECIPES**

The restoring should only be done if absolutely necessary as more current data is overwritten. Proceed as follows:

- 1. Exit the Runtime.
- 2. Save all existing master recipes.
- 3. Rename file Recipe.unique or delete it. It automatically re-created at the Runtime start from the .MR files.
- 4. Restore the .MR files from an earlier backup.
- 5. Restart the Runtime.

# **CONTROL RECIPE**

Each control recipe has a unique ID under which it is saved on the hard disk with file extension . CR; e.g. 9.CR

Each recipe conforms to one file. The ID of the recipe can be read from the list of the control recipes. The **Control recipe ID** column must be visible to do this. Control recipes are always based on a master recipe and are therefore always assigned to it. The ID number circles are therefore only unique with regard to the underlying master recipe.

**Example:** The master recipe with ID 9 has the control recipes with IDs 1 and 2. The master recipe with ID 10 also has the control recipes with IDs 1 and 2.

Therefore each master recipe has a sub folder in which the control recipes are saved. The name of the folder is always: <Master recipe ID>.crd. In our example there is the folder 9.crd with files 1.CR and 2.CR and the folder 10.crd with files 1.CR and 2.CR.

The folder for the command recipes are sub folder of Runtime folder:

\RT\FILES\zenon\system\BatchRecipes\. In this folder the individual control recipe folders have been created. In each control recipe folder there is the file Recipe.unique. It makes sure that the recipe names are unique.

#### BACKING UP AND RESTORING CONTROL RECIPES

Proceed in the same was as for the master recipes only that you now need to backup all .CR files and the appertaining folder structure. At restoring you must delete all Recipe.unique files. They are also restored automatically.



# 8.11 Synchronization

# CHECKING FOR CHANGES IN THE EDITOR

When loading, opening, duplicating or approving a recipe, a check is made to see if the configuration of the unit, phase, etc. was changed in the Editor. If a change is detected, it is taken over in the object to which the function concerned is assigned. Settings that were overwritten in Runtime are retained. If the recipe has been changed, this is shown by means of an asterisk (\*) in the recipe name.

At reloading the recipe is also checked.

**Note:** Only recipes in edit mode or test mode are updated. Recipes in test mode that are currently running are only updated after execution has ended.

# Attention

Changes to phases in the Editor are taken over without warning message when the recipe is releases in the Runtime. For all data which are not overwritten in the Runtime, the Editor is the leading system.

# SYNCHRONIZATION OF PHASES

Editing of phases and their parameters is possible at four consecutive levels:

- ▶ in the zenon Editor
- ▶ in the operation template
- in the master recipe
- ▶ in the control recipe

When instancing, the data form the level above is always used. Synchronization and comparison in the editing dialogs also always relates to the previous level.



Position of phase	Phase that provides comparison data
in the zenon Editor	No data to compare.
in the master recipe	Phase configured in the zenon Editor.
in the control recipe	The phase from the master recipe.
in the operation template	Phase configured in the zenon Editor.
In the operation instance in the master recipe	The phase from the template of the operation.
In the operation instance in the control recipe	The phase from the operation instance in the master recipe.

# ORIGIN OF DATA FOR COMPARISON OR SYNCHRONIZATION:

You can find information on the origin of the comparison data in the tooltips of the control elements for synchronization.

# **RECIPES AND OPERATIONS**

Synchronization is carried out if:

- A recipe is opened
- A recipe is reloaded
- An operation template is saved and a recipe is opened that has an instance of this template

Values in phases and parameters correspond to the values in the templates as standard and can be overwritten locally.

# CHANGES TO CONTROL STRATEGIES AND CONTROL STRATEGY ACTIVATION

The following applies for control strategies (on page 200) during synchronization:

- When synchronizing recipes, phases with active control strategies are updated with the amended information (name change, new tags added, etc.).
- If control strategies were activated for a phase in the Editor, the phase in Runtime is set to the status where no control strategy is active. It contains only return parameters.
- If control strategies are deactivated for a phase in the Editor, the phase contains the complete current configuration of the phase after synchronization. With this switch, all changes that have been made to the phase in the recipe are discarded.



# 9. Function authorizations

For changes in the Editor and in Runtime, the corresponding function authorizations can be issued to users. A warning is displayed if an operation for which there are no corresponding rights is executed. Exception: No warning is displayed when editing.

If a user does not have the function authorization, then

- ▶ In Runtime: the corresponding functions cannot be executed
- ▶ in the Editor: Toolbars and context menus of the corresponding module are grayed out

Users can also log in temporarily for the execution of operations for which they have no special authorizations. For details on this, see the **Permanent and temporary login** section in the User administration manual.

You can find details on the individual authorizations in the User administration chapter, most of all in the **Function authorizations** section.

#### Note:

- These function authorizations are only available if Batch Control is licensed on the computer.
- Operation instances always use the user rights of the recipe in which they are embedded.

# **10. Behavior in the network**

The module **Batch Control** is fully capable of using a network in terms of Client/Server technology. This means that Batch recipes can be created, duplicated, edited, deleted, etc. on a Client. The whole recipe management remains always on the server. Likewise the whole process control such as **start** recipe, **pause** recipe, **stop** recipe, etc. can be done from the Client. Also mode changes and manual operations such as **jump** are possible.

# Attention

Module Batch Control does not support redundancy. There is no synchronization between Standby Server. When the Server breaks down, the executed Batch recipes are not continued on the Standby! Recipes can also be started whilst the configured Server 2 is the primary server.

For using Batch Control in a network the following is true:

# ALLOCATION

The forcing of allocations can be carried out from the Server or Client.



# FUNCTIONS

Functions are always carried out at the Server.

# PHASES

- Editing phases in the master recipe:
  - Edit mode: Changes a done locally at the Client. If during the editing the recipe is saved on another computer in the network, the current configuration is lost. An appropriate message is displayed and the editing dialog is closed. The new data from the server are displayed.
  - Test mode: Changes a done at the Server.
- Control recipe: Changes a done at the Server.
- ▶ If a recipe is saved in the network, all Clients using this recipe are updated.
- If a recipe is opened on a client, the current version on the server is always displayed, even if it has not yet been saved there.
- ▶ If a recipe is deleted on a computer, a message is displayed on all computer on which the recipe is opened that the recipe has been deleted.

# MODE

- ▶ The mode (automatic, semi-automatic, manual) can be switched by the server and the client.
- > Jumps in the recipe and step-by-step progress of a recipe can be done from Server and Client.

# RELOAD

Changes made to the recipes on the client that have not been saved can be overwritten when reloading.

# RECIPES

- Recipes can be started and controlled by the zenon server and by zenon clients.
- If parameters in a recipe are changed whilst the recipe is saved on a different zenon client, the change to the parameters is refused and not carried out.
- A master recipe can be changed on the zenon client whilst it switches to test mode on the zenon server and is sent to the zenon client. The changes that were last saved are transferred. This means: If the zenon client saves last, the recipe is switched to editing mode again. If the zenon server saves last, the change to the zenon clients is discarded and the recipe is in test mode.
- If a communication error occurs when deleting a recipe or an operation template, the deletion is refused with an error message.



## WEB CLIENT

With a standard web client:

- The settings for grid and color can be changed
- No recipes can be created or edited
- The size of the editing area cannot be changed
- In the toolbar, all symbols that are not permitted are deactivated; it is not possible to select the corresponding objects.

Web client PRO is not affected by these restrictions.

# 10.1 Redundancy

zenon Batch Control does not support redundancy. In networks that have been set up as redundant, this means:

- If the server fails, the recipe is in an undefined status.
   It is not passed on to the standby server.
- On the standby server, once it has stepped up to become the server:
  - Master recipes can be switched back to edit mode and deleted. These changes are carried over to the server once it is working again.
  - Control recipes cannot be edited or executed.
- Starting, pausing or other commands are not possible on the Standby Server.
- If the recipe is not edited in the Standby Server, it runs normally again as soon as the server is online again.

# **11. Reporting**

Reports for configuration of the recipes can be created with the Report Viewer integrated into zenon.

When switching to a Report Viewer screen:

- it is possible to filter for recipes (on page 254)
- Datasets for Batch Control reports can be created:
  - Master recipe
  - Control recipe
  - Recipe screens



- Matrix cells
- PFC structure
- Phases
- Parameters
- Transitions
- Unit allocations
- Operation instance

# **11.1** Batch Control recipe filter

When screen switching to a report viewer type screen, a filter can be set for recipes from the Batch Control module. To filter according to recipes:

- 1. Open the Report definition tab for screen switching.
- 2. Go to area Filter.
- 3. In the Module-specific filter tab, click on Batch Control: Recipe filter.
- 4. The dialog for configuring the filter is opened.

	Filter	
tch Control recipe filter		
Use recipe filter for		OK
		Cancel
Control recipe		
0		Help
Recipe filter settings		
Apply selection from recipe	list from calling Batch Control screen	
Master recipe		
Name with wildcards	▼	
Version		
All	✓	
State master recipe		
Released or outdated	¥	
Filter result for		
Only oldest ID	¥	
Control recipe		
Name with wildcards	¥	
State control recipe		
All	×	
	*	
Filter result for		
Only oldest ID	¥	



## USE RECIPE FILTER FOR

Parameters	Description	
Use recipe filter for	Selection of the recipe type that is applied to the filter:	
	Master recipe	
	Control recipe	
Master recipe	Active: It is filtered on Master recipes.	
Control recipe	Active: It is filtered on control recipes.	
	<b>Note:</b> The attendant master recipes must also be selected. If no master recipe has been selected for the control recipe, the filer cannot find the recipe being searched for in Runtime.	
	<b>Hint:</b> If the master recipe is not known, filtering of all master recipes with a placeholder is recommended.	

## **RECIPE FILTER SETTINGS**

Parameters	Description	
Recipe filter settings	Options for the recipe filter	
Apply selection from recipe list from calling Batch Control screen	Active: In Runtime, the first selected recipe of the batch screen from which the report viewer screen is called up is used. Individual settings in this dialog are then not available.	
	<ul> <li>Inactive: The filter settings are changed individually using this dialog.</li> </ul>	
Master recipe	Parameters for the selection of the master recipe. Select from drop-down list:	
	<ul> <li>Name with wildcards:</li> <li>A name with placeholder can be entered into the input field. Filtering according to this name is carried out.</li> </ul>	
	Name from variable: The name of the master recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button opens the dialog for selecting variables.	
	<ul> <li>ID from variable:</li> <li>The ID of the master recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button opens the dialog for selecting variables.</li> </ul>	
Version	Selection of the version (on page 187) from the drop-down list:	
	<ul> <li>All: The version stated is ignored and each version found is</li> </ul>	



	used.
•	Fixed version: This filters for versions that are entered in this field. Highest possible version: 4294967295
•	Version from variable: The version of the master recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button in order to open the dialog for selecting a variable.
>	Only oldest version: Only the recipe with the oldest version number is used.
•	Only newest version: Only the recipe with the newest version number is used.
▶	Default: All





State master recipe	Status of the recipe Selection from drop-down list, depending on filtering:
	Filtering for template recipes:
	► All
	Edit mode
	▶ Released
	Test mode
	Test running
	Ended with an error
	Outdated
	Filtering for control recipes:
	Released or outdated
	▶ Released
	<ul> <li>Outdated</li> </ul>
Filter result for	Define which ID is to be selected when filtering for names by selecting from the drop-down list:
	<ul> <li>Only oldest ID</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Only newest ID</li> </ul>
	Because a report can only be used for one recipe, it is not possible to filter for "all recipes".
Control recipe	Parameters for the selection of the control recipe. Select from drop-down list:
	<ul> <li>Name with wildcards:</li> <li>A name with placeholder can be entered into the input field. Filtering according to this name is carried out.</li> </ul>
	Name from variable: The name of the control recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button opens the dialog for selecting variables.
	<ul> <li>ID from variable: The ID of the master recipe is defined by a variable in Runtime. Click on button opens the dialog for selecting variables. Precisely one recipe can be found if the variable value at the time of execution is a valid ID of a control recipe.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Job ID from variable:</li> <li>Finds control recipes that have the given job ID number.</li> <li>Any type of variable can be linked. The value is automatically converted into STRING.</li> <li>Note: If the variable does not have a value, no recipe is</li> </ul>



Help	Opens online help.
Cancel	Discards all changes in all tabs and closes the dialog.
ок	Applies all changes, creates filter and closes the dialog.
	<ul><li>Only oldest ID</li><li>Only newest ID</li></ul>
Filter result for	Define which ID is to be selected when filtering for names or job ID by selecting from the drop-down list:
	<ul> <li>Outdated</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Executed</li> <li>Terminated with error</li> </ul>
	Running
	Prepared
	▶ All
State control recipe	Selection of the recipe status from the drop-down list:
	sent to the Report Viewer.

Note for variable selection using name or ID: For the selection of variables according to name or ID, numerical variables and string variables can be selected respectively. The data types are converted to the respective correct form.

# **12. Formula editor**

The formula editor is automatically opened if you need to enter or edit a formula. Above all:

Editor:

- Properties of the phases
- Interlocking conditions
- Phase done condition
- Condition for transient status



• Conditions for the detection of communication problems and PLC errors

#### Runtime:

- > Phase done condition and interlocking when editing a phase
- Editing transitions

# Information

If the phase referenced in the formula is removed and a new phase is added, the operands are reassigned for transitions. To be able to newly assign the operands, the same phase must be added again. Parameters from a different phase are not automatically linked.

### **ENTER FORMULA**

The following input is accepted:

- Constant as decimal number
- Hexadecimal number if it is preceded by an x
- Dot as decimal separator; the following is true:
  - Comma is automatically converted into a dot: 23,000 to 23.000



Condition	x
Parameter → +	Add Replace Delete
Logical operators           AND         NOT         OR           Bit by bit and relational operators         &         I	XOR ()
> >= < = <>	<=
(X01.Value >= 2)	•
Copy Paste Help	OK Cancel

• Decimal places which are only zeros are removed: 23.000 to 23



Parameter	Description
Parameter List	List of the tags which can be used for the formula.
	Each entry contains of:
	a basis node for the label
	a value
	a status
	the bits for value and status
	A symbol at the first node displays whether it is a command or return tag.
	The short indentifier at the beginning of the name is used for the formula.
Add	Opens the dialog for adding a parameter (on page 264). For this, the following applies:
	The following can be added: numeric and binary tags and tags for time duration. Values for duration are converted to seconds
	For conditions of the phase only the tags created for it can be added.
	<ul> <li>Tags can be added multiple times.</li> </ul>
Replace	Makes it possible to replace a tag. Clicking on the button opens the dialog to add a parameter (on page 264).
	Selection of a new parameter replaces the highlighted parameter.
	<ul> <li>Clicking on the <b>no selection</b> button deletes the highlighted parameter from the list.</li> </ul>
	The short identifier remains the same at replacing.
Delete	Removes the highlighted tag. For a tag to be deleted:
	the formula must be correct
	the selected tag must not be used in the formula
Logical operators	Via the buttons for operators, operators are added to the formula.
AND	logical 'AND'
OR	logical 'OR'
XOR	logical 'EXCLUSIVE OR'
NOT	Negation
Syntax	The operator buttons add the string shown on them to the formula.
(	Open parenthesis



Close parenthesis
And
Or
greater than
greater or equal
less than
Less than or equal
equal
less or greater
Configuration and display of the formula.
Copies the whole formula:
<ul> <li>All configured tags from the tag tree</li> </ul>
Formula from the field
Pastes a formula from the clipboard. At this all already configured elements are deleted and replaced by the copied formula.
When copying formulas between phases, it is tried to resolve the operands via their names. For tags which are not found invalid entries are created in the operands list. Their point of use in the formula remain the same.
Applies formula and closes the dialog.
For this the formula must be correct.
Discards all changes and closes the dialog.

# Information

You can link up to 99 tags in a formula. X01 to X99. The length of the formula must not exceed 4096 characters.



## THE MEANING OF THE BITS:

Parameter	Description
value bits	32 value bits (from 0 -31) are available. They describe the tag value bit by bit. For binary tags only bit 0 is of importance, for SINT and USINT only the bits from $0 - 7$ , etc.
State bits	Here you find the most commonly used status bits. You find the exact definition and use of the status bits in the Status Bits List.
value and status	<ul> <li>In the formulas, all values (value bits and status bits) are treated as binary values and can be logically linked with AND, OR, etc.</li> <li>The total value and overall status are an exception to this. In order to arrive at a Boolean expression, this total value has to be ORed bitwise with a constant. For this, we use the operator &amp;.</li> <li>For the result 0 (FALSE) of this logical ORing, we get the binary value 0 (FALSE), otherwise 1 (TRUE).</li> </ul>
	Example: See the bitwise ORing example chapter

# 💡 Info

The status bits NORM and N\_NORM are only available in the formula editor and cannot be engineered via the status.

# Information

Formulas with binary X values and bitwise linking can be used with a maximum of 2 binary values. If more values are required, the linking must be carried out without binary X values.

Example:

X01.Value & X02.Value -> works

X01.Value & X02.Value & X03.Value -> does not work

But:

X01.00 AND X02.00 AND X03.00 AND X04.00 AND X05.00 -> works



# 12.1 Adding parameters

Clicking on the **Add** button in the formula editor (on page 258) opens the dialog to select parameters that are to be used for a formula.

>	Selection	on - TAG	×
🖃 🖷 Workspace: 'Batch_Contri	Name 🆄	Description	Туре
BATCH_11	Filter text 🛛 🍸	Filter text	Filter text 🝸
	Batch Modus		Value
	Command		Value
	Status SPS		Return
	Stirring rate		Value
	Stirring duration		Value
	<		>
) < >	0/0/0 Extended filter quipmer	nt modeling	
	No selection	OK Cancel	Help

Parameter	Description
Project list	Display of the active project. Only parameters that have been created in the active project for the phase to be configured can be selected.
TAG list	List of the parameters available for the selected phase. Apply by selecting and clicking on the OK button or by double clicking on a parameter.
No selection	<ul> <li>Deletes parameters already set. Only effective for replacement of parameters.</li> <li>If a parameter is highlighted in the formula editor and this dialog is opened by clicking on the <b>Replace</b> button, then clicking on the <b>No selection</b> button deletes the parameter from the list in the formula editor.</li> <li>The short identifier remains the same at replacing.</li> </ul>
OK	Inserts the selected parameter into the parameter list of the formula and closes the dialog.
Cancel	Discards selection and closes dialog.
Help	Opens online help.



# 12.2 List of status bits

Bit number	Short term	Long name	zenon Logic long name
0	M1	User status 1; for Command Processing: Action type "Block"; Service Tracking (Main.chm::/IEC850.chm::/117281. htm) of the IEC 850 driver	_VSB_ST_M1
1	M2	User status2	_VSB_ST_M2
2	M3	User status3	_VSB_ST_M3
3	M4	User status4	_VSB_ST_M4
4	M5	User status5	_VSB_ST_M5
5	M6	User status6	_VSB_ST_M6
6	M7	User status7	_VSB_ST_M7
7	M8	User status8	_VSB_ST_M8
8	NET_SEL	Select in the network	_VSB_SELEC
9	REVISION	Revision	_VSB_REV
10	PROGRESS	In operation	_VSB_DIREC
11	TIMEOUT	Command "Timeout exceeded" (command runtime exceeded)	_VSB_RTE
12	MAN_VAL	Manual value	_VSB_MVALUE
13	M14	User status14	_VSB_ST_14
14	M15	User status15	_VSB_ST_15
15	M16	User status16	_VSB_ST_16
16	GI	General query	_VSB_GR
17	SPONT	Spontaneous	_VSB_SPONT
18	INVALID	Invalid	_VSB_I_BIT
19	T_STD_E	External standard time (standard time) Caution: up to version 7.50, this	_VSB_SUWI
		was the status bit T_CHG_A	
20	OFF	Switched off	_VSB_N_UPD
21	T_EXTERN	Real time - external time stamp	_VSB_RT_E
22	T_INTERN	Internal time stamp	_VSB_RT_I
23	N_SORTAB	Not sortable	_VSB_NSORT
24	FM_TR	Error message transformer value	_VSB_DM_TR



25	RM_TR	Working message transformer value	_VSB_RM_TR
26	INFO	Information for the variable	_VSB_INFO
27	ALT_VAL	Alternate value	_VSB_AVALUE
28	RES28	Reserved for internal use (alarm flashing)	_VSB_RES28
29	N_UPDATE	Not updated (zenon network)	_VSB_ACTUAL
30	T_STD	Internal standard time	_VSB_WINTER
31	RES31	Reserved for internal use (alarm flashing)	_VSB_RES31
32	СОТО	Cause of transmission bit 1	_VSB_TCB0
33	COT1	Cause of transmission bit 2	_VSB_TCB1
34	COT2	Cause of transmission bit 3	_VSB_TCB2
35	СОТ3	Cause of transmission bit 4	_VSB_TCB3
36	COT4	Cause of transmission bit 5	_VSB_TCB4
37	COT5	Cause of transmission bit 6	_VSB_TCB5
38	N_CONF	Negative confirmation of command by device (IEC 60870 [P/N])	_VSB_PN_BIT
39	TEST	Test bit (IEC870 [T])	_VSB_T_BIT
40	WR_ACK	Writing acknowledged	_VSB_WR_ACK
41	WR_SUC	Writing successful	_VSB_WR_SUC
42	NORM	Normal status	_VSB_NORM
43	N_NORM	Deviation normal status	_VSB_ABNORM
44	BL_870	IEC 60870 Status: blocked	_VSB_BL_BIT
45	SB_870	IEC 60870 Status: substituted	_VSB_SP_BIT
46	NT_870	IEC 60870 Status: not topical	_VSB_NT_BIT
47	OV_870	IEC 60870 Status: overflow	_VSB_OV_BIT
48	SE_870	IEC 60870 Status: select	_VSB_SE_BIT
49	T_INVAL	External time stamp invalid	not defined
50	CB_TRIP	Breaker tripping detected	not defined
51	CB_TR_I	Breaker tripping detection inactive	not defined
52	OR_DRV	Value out of the valid range (IEC 61850)	not defined
53	T_UNSYNC	ClockNotSynchronized (IEC 61850)	not defined



54	PR_NR	Not recorded in the Process Recorder	not defined
55	RES55	reserved	not defined
56	RES56	reserved	not defined
57	RES57	reserved	not defined
58	RES58	reserved	not defined
59	RES59	reserved	not defined
60	RES60	reserved	not defined
61	RES61	reserved	not defined
62	RES62	reserved	not defined
63	RES63	reserved	not defined

## Information

Ô

In formulas all status bits are available. For other use the availability can be limited.

You can read details on status processing in the Status processing chapter.

# **12.3** Logical Operators

Logical links: Variables will only be checked for the logical value '0'; if the value does not equal '0', it will be considered as '1'.

In contrast to bit formulas, the technical range can be modified by a stretch factor -> (not equal '0' or '1').

Operator	Meaning
AND	logical 'AND'
NOT	Negation
OR	logical 'OR'
XOR	logical 'EXCLUSIVE OR'

The operators have the following priority in the formula calculation:



Priority	Operator
1	& (operator for bit formulas)
2	NOT
3	AND
4	XOR/OR

# 💡 Info

Up to 99 variables can be linked in one formula. X01 to X99.

# 💡 Info

The status bits NORM and N\_NORM are only available in the formula editor and cannot be engineered via the status.

# 12.4 Bit formulas

Bit formulas only have a logical high or low state. In contrast to logical formulas, the raw value is already predefined (0,1).

Operator	Description
&	AND
	OR

# 12.4.1 Example: ORing bitwise

You want to find out if one of the user status bits 1-8 (M1 ... M8) of the variable X01 is set.

## **USUAL FORMULA:**

X01.M1 OR X01.M2 OR X01.M3 OR X01.M4 OR X01.M5 OR X01.M6 OR X01.M7 OR X01.M8 This query can be made much easier by the logical ORing of the overall status.



### LOGICAL ORING

#### X01.Status & 0xFF

The constant can be entered in hexadecimals, as described above:

0xFF corresponds to decimal 255; these are the first eight status bits (binary 1111111). If one of these bit is set to 1, the result of this bitwise ORing is 1 (true), otherwise it is 0 (false).

If, for example, all user status bits except the user status bit M7 should be queried, the binary statement for this would be: 10111111. Bit 7 is not of interest and is thus set to 0. This corresponds to 0xBF in hexadecimal. The expression for the formula is then: **X01.Status & 0xBF**.

Instead of ORing bitwise with a constant, the value can also be directly compared to a decimal number. If the comparison is wrong, the binary value is 0 (false) otherwise it is 1 (true).

## Example:

You want to find out if the value is equal to the constant 202: The formula is:

#### X01.value = 202

If the value is equal to the constant 202, the result of the comparison is 1 (True) otherwise it is 0 (False).

Note: The bitwise ORing works with the OR character (I), the same as in this example.

# 12.5 Comparison operators

Comparison operators are for the direct comparison of two numeric values. The result of this comparison is a binary value. "0" if the condition is not fulfilled and "1" if the condition is fulfilled.

Operator	Description
<	less
>	greater
<=	Less than or equal
>=	greater or equal
=	Equal
<>	unequal

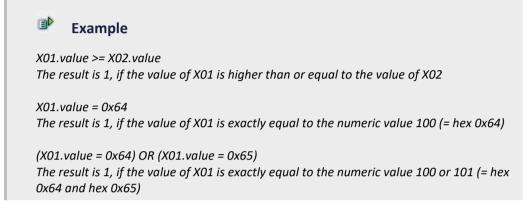
To the left and to the right of the comparison operator, there has to be a (total) value or a (total) status, single bits cannot be used with these comparison operators.

There can also be a constant to the right of the comparison operator. These constants are entered as hexadecimal values or decimal values in the combined element.



Hexadecimal numbers are automatically converted to decimal numbers by clicking on **OK**. For example,  $0 \times 64$  corresponds to the numerical value 100.

Note: The combined element is not available in the **Batch Control** module.



# 12.6 Examples for formulas

## SIMPLE LOGICAL AND LINKING BETWEEN TWO BIT VALUES



Formula: X01.03 AND X02.03

This formula has the status TRUE, if both **bit 3** of variable 1 and **bit 3** of variable 2 both have the value 1.

## COMPARISON OF AN VALUE OR STATUS OF A VARIABLE

Example

(X01.Value> X02.Value)

#### COMPARE COMPARISONS TO ONE OTHER ON A LOGICAL BASIS

Example

(X01.Value> X02.Value) AND (X01.Value = X02.Value)

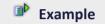


## COMPARE WITH VALUE BITS AND STATUS BITS

# Example

(X01.Value> X02.Value) AND (X01.Value = X02.Value) OR (X01.03 = X02.03)

## COMPARE A VALUE WITH A DECIMAL OR HEXADECIMAL VALUE



Formula: (X01.Value = 111)

Formula: (X01.Value = 0x6F)

If a hexadecimal values is used, this is later transferred to decimal by clicking on **OK**. If a decimal value is entered and confirmed, the value continues to be displayed as a decimal value after reopening.

## 💡 Info

It is not possible to use a comma or a period when entering values.

# 13. XML export: Units, phases and recipes

The Batch Control module allows the export of units, phases and recipes into XML files. The structure of these files is described in the following chapters.

# 13.1 General recipe properties in the XML file

#### **PROPERTIES OF MASTER RECIPES**

Properties of master recipes are also contained in exported control recipes.

node	Property	Description	Possible value
Recipes			▶ MasterRecipe
			► ControlRecipe
			<ul> <li>OperationTemplate</li> </ul>
	MrId	ID of the corresponding master	



	recipe.	
MrName	Name of the corresponding master recipe.	
MrDescription	Description of the corresponding master recipe.	
MrVersion	Version of the corresponding master recipe.	
MrSourceVersion	Original version of the master recipe.	
MrStatus	Status of the corresponding master recipe.	<ul> <li>1: Edit mode</li> <li>2: Released</li> <li>3: Test mode</li> <li>4: Test in execution</li> <li>8: Outdated</li> </ul>
RecipeType	Type of the recipe.	<ul><li>Matrix</li><li>Pfc</li></ul>
ApprovalTime	Time stamp of the corresponding master recipe.	
ApprovalUserName	Name of the user who approved the recipe.	
ApprovalUserID	ID of the user who approved the recipe.	
OutdatedTime	Outdated time for the recipe.	
OutdatedUserName	Name of the user who set the recipe to obsolete.	
OutdatedUserID	ID of the user who set the recipe to obsolete.	
Structure	Nodes for the structure of the recipe.	



## **PROPERTIES OF CONTROL RECIPES**

Property	Description	Possible value
CrId	ID of the control recipe.	
CrName	Name of the control recipe.	
CrDescription	Description of the control recipe.	
CrStatus	Status of the control recipe.	<ul> <li>2: Prepared</li> <li>3: In execution</li> <li>4: Executed</li> <li>7: Outdated</li> </ul>
CrJobID	Job ID of the control recipe	
CrJobIDVar	Variable for the job number.	
CreationTime	Time stamp of the creation of the control recipe.	
CreationUserName	Name of the user who created the recipe.	
CreationUserID	ID of the user who created the recipe.	
StartingTime	Time stamp of the start of the control recipe.	
StartingUserName	Name of the user who started the control recipe.	
StartingUserID	ID of the user who started the control recipe.	

#### **PROPERTIES OF OPERATIONS**

Property	Description	Possible value
OpId	ID of the Operation template.	
OpName	Name of the Operation template.	
OpDescription	Description of the operation template.	
ОрТуре	Type of operation	▶ Matrix
		▶ Pfc
OpStatus	Status of the operation template.	▶ 1: Edit mode
		▶ 2: Released
ApprovalTime	Time stamp of the approval of the	



	operation template.	
ApprovalUserName	Name of the user who approved the operation template.	
ApprovalUserID	ID of the user who approved the operation template.	
Structure	Nodes for the structure of the recipe.	

# **13.2** Matrix properties in the XML file

## MATRIX STRUCTURE

node	Property	Description	Possible value
Structure			
	Column	Column number in the	▶ Type 1: Phase
		matrix recipe.	► Type 2: Operation
	ObjectName	Name of the linked phase or the linked operation.	
	StepInfo	Step number in the matrix recipe.	
	StepDescr	Description of the step in the matrix recipe.	

### MATRIX CELL PROPERTIES

node	Property	Description	Possible value
Cell			Type 1: Phase
			Type 2: Operation
	CellActive	TRUE if the matrix cell is active at this point.	<ul> <li>TRUE: Matrix cell active</li> </ul>
			► FALSE: Matrix cell inactive



ChartId	ID of the matrix cell	
Phase	Properties node for the phase of a matrix cell. You can find details in the General properties (on page 282) chapter.	
ControlStrategy	Properties node for the mode of operation used.	
	Note: With a phase, this mode of operation is used in a matrix cell.	
	You can find details in the General properties (on page 282) chapter.	

# **13.3 PFC properties in the XML file**

#### STRUCTURE OF THE PFC RECIPE

node	Property	Description	Possible value
Structure			
	LastObjId	Last-used ID of the PFC recipe.	
	ColCount	Number of columns in the PFC recipe.	
	RowCount	Number of rows in the PFC recipe.	
	CenterColOffset	Start coordinates of the column.	
	CenterRowOffset	Start coordinates of the row.	

## **ELEMENT PROPERTIES**

node	Description	Possible value
Chart object	Element for the PFC recipe.	TYPE: 1=start element
		TYPE: 2=end element



► TYPE: 3=phase
<pre>TYPE: 4=transition</pre>
<ul> <li>TYPE: 5=Begin branch</li> </ul>
► TYPE: 6=end branch
<ul> <li>TYPE: 7=start parallel branch</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>TYPE: 8=end parallel branch</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>TYPE: 9=unit allocation</li> </ul>
TYPE: 10=operation
► TYPE: 11=line
<ul> <li>TYPE: 12=jump target</li> </ul>

#### **BEGIN ELEMENT**

node	Property	Description	Possible value
ChartObject		Element for the PFC recipe.	TYPE: 1
	ChartId	ID of the element in the PFC recipe.	
	ChartRow	Row coordinates of the element.	
	ChartCol	Column coordinates of the element.	

#### END ELEMENT

node	Property	Description	Possible value
ChartObject		Element for the PFC recipe.	TYPE: 2
	ChartId	ID of the element in the PFC recipe.	
	ChartRow	Row coordinates of the element.	
	ChartCol	Column coordinates of the element.	



## PHASE

node	Property	Description	Possible value
ChartObject			TYPE: 3
	ChartId	ID of the element in the PFC recipe.	
	ChartRow	Row coordinates of the element.	
	ChartCol	Column coordinates of the element.	
	Unit	Unit name of the linked phase.	
	Phase	Properties node for the phase of a PFC element.	

### TRANSITION

node	Property	Description	Possible value
ChartObject			TYPE: 4
	ChartId	ID of the element in the PFC recipe.	
	ChartRow	Row coordinates of the element.	
	ChartCol	Column coordinates of the element.	
Condition		Condition for the selected transitions.	
	Expression	The conditions are used to inform the REE of the status of the technological function in the controller.	
OperandTag		Addressing of the tag conditions.	
	PhaseChartId	ID of the phase in the condition.	
	TagAddressing	Tag of the phase.	



### INITIAL BRANCH

node	Property	Description	Possible value
ChartObject			TYPE: 5
	ChartId	ID of the element in the PFC recipe.	
	ChartRow	Row coordinates of the element.	
	ChartCol	Column coordinates of the element.	
Cell		Number of branches from left to right.	
	Connector	Linking points of the branches.	<ul> <li>TRUE: Branch downwards.</li> <li>FALSE: No sequence selection.</li> </ul>
	ArrayOffset	Initial cell of the branch.	

#### END BRANCH

node	Property	Description	Possible value
ChartObject			TYPE: 6
	ChartId	ID of the element in the PFC recipe.	
	ChartRow	Row coordinates of the element.	
	ChartCol	Column coordinates of the element.	
Cell		Number of branches from left to right.	
	Connector	Linking points of the branches.	<ul> <li>TRUE: Branch downwards.</li> </ul>
			<ul> <li>FALSE: No sequence selection.</li> </ul>
	ArrayOffset	End cell of the branch.	



### **BEGIN PARALLEL BRANCH**

node	Property	Description	Possible value
ChartObject			TYPE: 7
	ChartId	ID of the element in the PFC recipe.	
	ChartRow	Row coordinates of the element.	
	ChartCol	Column coordinates of the element.	
Cell		Number of branches from left to right.	
	Connector	Linking points of the branches.	<ul> <li>TRUE: Branch downwards.</li> </ul>
			<ul> <li>FALSE: No sequence selection.</li> </ul>
	ArrayOffset	Initial cell of the branch.	

#### END PARALLEL BRANCH

node	Property	Description	Possible value
ChartObject			TYPE: 8
	ChartId	ID of the element in the PFC recipe.	
	ChartRow	Row coordinates of the element.	
	ChartCol	Column coordinates of the element.	
Cell		Number of branches from left to right.	
	Connector	Linking points of the branches.	<ul> <li>TRUE: Branch downwards.</li> </ul>
			<ul> <li>FALSE: No sequence selection.</li> </ul>
	ArrayOffset	End cell of the branch.	



## UNIT ALLOCATION

node	Property	Description	Possible value
ChartObject			TYPE: 9
	ChartId	ID of the element in the PFC recipe.	
	ChartRow	Row coordinates of the element.	
	ChartCol	Column coordinates of the element.	
Allocations		Name of the unit allocation.	<ul><li>Allocations</li><li>Deallocations</li></ul>
	Unit	Name of the allocated unit.	
	Global	Options for the clearing of the unit.	<ul> <li>FALSE=clearing the last allocation</li> </ul>
			<ul> <li>TRUE=recipe-wide clearing</li> </ul>

## OPERATION

node	Property	Description	Possible value
ChartObject			TYPE: 10
	ChartId	ID of the element in the PFC recipe.	
	ChartRow	Row coordinates of the element.	
	ChartCol	Column coordinates of the element.	
Operation		Operation	
	OpId	ID of the operation	
	OpName	Name of the operation.	
	ОрТуре	Type of the operation.	
	OpDescription	Description of the operation.	
	OpStatus	Status of the operation	
	ApprovalTime	Time stamp for approved recipes.	
	ApprovalName	Name of the approved	



		recipe.	
	ApprovalUserId	ID of the user who approved the recipe.	
Structure		Structure of the recipe.	PFC_Structure
			<ul> <li>Matrix_Structure</li> </ul>

## LINE

node	Property	Description	Possible value
ChartObject			TYPE: 11
	ChartId	ID of the line.	
	ChartRow	Row coordinates for the starting point of the line.	
	ChartCol	Column coordinates for the starting point of the line.	
	FirstCol	Column coordinates of the cell where the line starts.	
	FirstRow	Row coordinates of the cell where the line starts.	
	SecondCol	Column coordinates of the cell where the line ends.	
	SecondRow	Row coordinates of the cell where the line ends.	
	LineSegments	Column, row, type coordinates of the cells,	<ul> <li>0: Straight line from top to bottom</li> </ul>
		separated by # where the complete line runs.	<ul> <li>1: 90° from the top to the right</li> </ul>
			<ul> <li>2: 90° from the top to the left</li> </ul>
			3: Straight line from left to right
			<ul> <li>4: 90° from the right to the bottom</li> </ul>
			► 5: 90° from the left to the bottom



## JUMP TARGET

node	Property	Description	Possible value
ChartObject			TYPE: 12
	ChartId	ID of the jump target.	
	ChartCol	Column coordinates for the starting point of the jump target.	
	ChartRow	Row coordinates for the starting point of the jump target.	

# **13.4** Parameter properties

### PHASES

node	Property	Description	Possible value
Phase		General properties of the phase.	
	PhaseName	Name of the phase.	
	PhaseDescr	Freely definable string for detailed description of the phase.	
	TOAllocation	Time period, in days, hours, minutes and seconds, that is waited until the unit is allocated.	
	TOInterlocking	Time period in days, hours, minutes and seconds in which the condition defined in the input lock property must return the value TRUE.	
	MinExecTime	Minimum execution duration of the phase.	



Explan TimeNe	ationMinExec eeded	Reason for minimum execution duration change necessary	<pre>TRUE: When entering value changes for this phase in Runtime, a reason for the change must be entered by the user. FALSE: No reason necessary.</pre>
MaxEx	ecTime	Time period in days, hours, minutes and seconds in which the condition defined in the phase done condition property must return the value TRUE.	
TOFolio	owingCond	Time period in days, hours, minutes and seconds in which the phase must be deactivated.	
MinExe fiable	ecTimeCrModi	Minimum execution duration of the phase in the control recipe can be modified.	TRUE: Minimum execution duration of the phase in the control recipe can be modified.
			FALSE: Minimum execution duration of the phase in the control recipe cannot be modified.



1	1	ı
RtLocalFlags	Flags whose properties are no longer linked to the Editor configuration. They are not overwritten when reloading.	These properties are a bit-coded DWORD in that each bit stands for a property. In a 0-based index, the coding is as follows: Timeout phase done
		condition: Bit 0 (decimal 1)
		<ul> <li>Timeout input lock: Bit 1 (decimal 2)</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Timeout subsequent condition: Bit 2 (decimal 4)</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Timeout unit allocation: Bit 3 (decimal 8)</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Minimum execution duration: Bit 7 (decimal 128)</li> </ul>
CSActive	Active control strategies	<ul> <li>TRUE: Active control strategies</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>FALSE: Control strategies inactive</li> </ul>
CSTag	control strategy tag	
CondInterlocking	Node for the condition of the input lock.	
CondDone	Node for phase done condition.	
CondEscaping	Node for the condition of leaving the phase.	
CondPausing	Node for the change from pausing to paused.	
CondHolding	Node for the change from holding to held.	



	1	
CondStopping	Node for the change from stopping to stopped.	
CondAborting	Node for the change from aborting to aborted.	
CondRestarting	Node for the condition for the change from starting to running.	
CondFailure	Node for the condition to recognize a communicaiton fault.	
CondConnReconnec t	Node for the condition to acknowledge a communication fault.	
CondPlcError	Node for the condition for PLC error.	

## PARAMETER

node	Property	Description	Possible value
Тад			
	TagName	Name of the TAG.	
	TagDescr	Description of the tag.	
	ТадТуре	Tag type	▶ 0: Value parameter
			▶ 1: Return TAG
			2: Initial parameters
	DataType	Data type	► 0: Bool
			▶ 1: String
			► 2: Numeric
			► 3: Time period
	Variable	Variable which is linked to the tag.	
	VariableDataType	Data type of the variable.	
	VariableDriver	Name of the EXE file of	



· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
	the driver of the variable.	
VariableDriverDescr	Name of the driver of the variable.	
TagValue VariantType	Value of the tag.	
ValueMin VariantType	Minimum value of the tag.	
ValueMax VariantType	Maximum value of the tag.	
VariableMin	Minimum value of the variable.	
VariableMax	Maximum value of the variable.	
MeasUnit	Unit of the variable.	
MaxStringLength	String length as engineered at the variable.	
EditableInRecipe	Changeable in master recipe	<ul> <li>TRUE: Tag values can be changed in the master recipe.</li> <li>FALSE: Tag values cannot be changed in the master recipe.</li> </ul>
ExplanationNeeded	Reason for value change necessary	<ul> <li>TRUE: When entering value changes for these parameters in Runtime, a reason for the change must be entered by the user.</li> <li>FALSE: Reason not</li> </ul>
		required.
TagModified	Tag value changed.	<ul> <li>TRUE: Tag value changed</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>FALSE: Tag value not changed.</li> </ul>
EditableInCr	Tag value can be changed in control recipe	<ul> <li>TRUE: Tag value can be changed in the control</li> </ul>



UseKeyt	board	Use screen Keyboard	<ul> <li>recipe.</li> <li>FALSE: Tag value cannot be changed in the control recipe.</li> <li>TRUE: Keyboard screen is used for this parameter.</li> <li>FALSE: Keyboard screen is not used for this parameter.</li> </ul>
Keyboar me	dPictureNa	Name of the selected keyboard screen. Only available if the keyboard screen property has been activated.	
RtLocalF	Flags	Flags whose properties are no longer linked to the Editor configuration. They are not overwritten when reloading.	<pre>Bit-coded DWORD. One bit each stands for a property. Coding in a 0-based index: Minimum: Bit 0 (decimal 1) Maximum: Bit 1 (decimal 2) Maximum: Bit 2 (decimal 4) Changeable in the control recipe: Bit 6 (decimal 64)</pre>

#### REACTIONS

node	Property	Description	Possible value
Reaction		Contains general properties for reactions.	
	EventType	Selection of the event type when the reaction is to be executed. For each event several reactions can be defined.	<ul> <li>0: Exit Runtime initiated</li> <li>1: Input interlocking blocked</li> <li>2: Waiting period input</li> </ul>



		interlocking
		exceeded
	►	3: Phase activated
	•	4: Maximum execution period exceeded
	►	5: Phase deactivated
	•	6: Waiting period following condition exceeded
	►	7: Linked variable interrupted
	►	8: Status change: Continue
	►	9: Status change: In execution
	►	10: Status change: Pausing
	►	11: Status change: Paused
	►	12: Status change: Executed
	►	13: Status change: Restarting
	►	14: Status change: Holding
	►	15: Status change: Held
	►	16: Status change: Stopping
	►	17: Status change: Stopped
	►	18: Status change: Aborting
	►	19: Status change: Aborted
	►	20: Mode change: Automatic
	►	21: Mode change: Semi-automatic
	•	22: Mode change: Manual



ReactionPrio	Displays the execution order when several	
ReactionDescr	Description per reaction.	44: Input lock checked successfully
		<ul> <li>43: PLC error rectified by deactivating the phase</li> </ul>
		42: PLC error rectified
		<ul><li>40: Phase started</li><li>41: PLC error</li></ul>
		<ul> <li>39: Loss of communication acknowledged</li> <li>40: Phase started</li> </ul>
		38: Loss of communication fixed
		<ul> <li>37: Loss of communication</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>36: Escape condition fulfilled</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>35: Escape condition started</li> </ul>
		34: Runtime restart
		<ul> <li>33: Command tag without value</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>32: Phase done condition completed</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>31: Finished writing value tags</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>30: Unit allocation not possible</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>29: Phase started multiple times</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>28: Waiting period unit allocation exceeded</li> </ul>



	reactions were defined for the same event. The order is defined by the position in the list and is only displayed here.	
ModeCommand	This reaction can be controlled in the Runtime of the execution mode as a reaction to the event.	<ul> <li>0: Ignore</li> <li>1: Automatic</li> <li>2: Semi-automatic</li> <li>3: Manual</li> </ul>
StateCommand	Recipe or phase command which is executed in the Runtime at the occurrence of the event.	<ul> <li>0: Ignore</li> <li>2: Pause recipe</li> <li>3: Recipe resuming</li> <li>4: Hold recipe</li> <li>5: Restart recipe</li> <li>6: Stop recipe</li> <li>7: Recipe aborting</li> <li>8: Phase pausing</li> <li>9: Phase holding</li> <li>10: Restart phase</li> <li>11: Phase resuming</li> </ul>
Function	Function that is to be carried out.	
CelEnabled	Create CEL entry	TRUE: The text defined in the CEL message text property is entered in the Chronological Event List, CEL. FALSE: No entry in the CEL.
CelMsg	CEL message text. Only available if CEL entry property is active.	
CelGroup	Allocation of a pre-existing alarm/event group to CEL messages for the selected event.	
CelClass	Allocation of a pre-existing alarm/event class to CEL messages for the selected	



	event.	
SourceTag	Tag whose value is written to the tag selected in the destination tag property.	
DestinationTag	Tag to which the value of the tag defined in source tag property is transferred.	
SetTag	Tag on which the defined set value should be written as reaction of the event.	
SetValueNum	Set value for numeric tag.	
SetValueStr	Set value for string tag.	
SetValueBool	Set value for a binary tag.	<ul> <li>0: Off</li> <li>1: On</li> <li>4: Toggle</li> </ul>
SetValueDuration	Set value in days, hours, minutes and seconds for duration tags. The time span is written as value in seconds on the variable linked at the tag.	
ExecuteBeforeStart Event	Allow execution before start event.	TRUE: The event can be executed before the Phase started event. FALSE: The event can
		only be started if the Phase started event has been executed.

## CONTROL STRATEGIES

node	Property	Description	Possible value
ControlStrate 9y		Contains properties for the configuration of the control strategies.	
	CSName	Name of the control	



	strategy.	
CSDescription	Description of the control strategy.	
ActiveCSNumber	Unique number of the control strategy for identification within this phase.	
CSTag	Node for the definition of a parameter linked for this control strategy.	

#### **CONTROL STRATEGIES**

node	Property	Description	Possible value
ConfiguredCo ntrolStrategy		Contains properties for the configured control strategy in the recipe.	
	CSName	Name of the control strategy.	
	CSDescription	Description of the control strategy.	
	ActiveCSNumber	Unique number of the control strategy for identification within this phase.	

# 14. CEL

Messages, information and errors for recipes, units, commands, reactions, events etc. are saved and displayed in the **Chronological Event List (CEL**).



### **GROUPS AND CLASSES**

CEL information can be allocated to groups and classes. These correspond to the **alarm/event groups** and **alarm/event classes** created in the project. The respective group or class is also entered in the CEL and can be used for filtering and grouping.

Groups and classes are allocated for actions for:

- Recipes
- Reactions
- Commands
- Value changes
- Jumping, forcing and step-by-step execution

#### RECIPES

The set group or class is entered into the CEL for the following recipe actions:

- Master recipes list
  - New
  - Create new version
  - Delete
  - Duplicate
  - Rename
  - Release
  - Highlight as outdated
  - New control recipe
- Control recipe list
  - Rename
  - Duplicate
  - Delete
- Operation list
  - New
  - Rename
  - Duplicate
  - Delete
  - Release



#### COMMANDS

The set group or class is entered for all recipe commands, phase commands, mode switches and restart messages.

#### VALUE CHANGES

The set group or class is entered in the event of value changes to parameters in control recipes.

#### JUMPING, FORCING AND STEP-BY-STEP EXECUTION

The set group or class is entered for all manual steps, when jumping steps and when executing steps.

#### ALLOCATION

Groups and classes are allocated

- ▶ General: In the properties of the Batch Control node in the CEL groups/classes group
- Reactions: In the properties of the event of a reaction in the Reactions/CEL entry group System is entered as a user.

# 15. Failure handling

If communication failures or PLC errors occur, these can be detected in Runtime using a formula configured in the editor. In the event of a communication error, the phase concerned is paused or held (depending on configuration).

# 15.1 communication errors

Detection of problems can be specially configured for each phase, because phases can also run on different PLCs. The reaction to a communication error is defined globally for all phases. In addition, a reaction to the communication error (on page 37) event can be configured.

To configure the detection of communication errors:

- 1. highlight the desired phase
- 2. Click, in the Loss of communication property group, on the Loss of communication property



- 3. In the formula editor (on page 258) that opens, define the condition for detecting communication errors
- 4. click on property Loss of communication acknowledged
- 5. Define the condition to detect the reestablishment of communication
- 6. Navigate to the properties for the Batch Control module
- 7. In the General/Loss of communication group, open the Action for loss of communication property
- 8. Select the desired reaction to a communication error from the drop-down list
  - Phase holding
  - Pause phase

#### CHECKING IN RUNTIME

When starting a phase or when restarting Runtime, 60 seconds is waited for values for the formula to check communication. If no values are received within this waiting time, a communication error is assumed.

Another check for communication errors is made if the phase is in a new step.

When restarting or reloading Runtime, the waiting for values can be in many steps, due to the phase being started again in the middle of the process. A check for communication failures is also made at areas where a check for faults is made.

#### REESTABLISHMENT

#### CHECKING THE FORMULA FOR REESTABLISHING COMMUNICATION

A loss of communication to the PLC is determined if the value of the formula for the Loss of communication property is TRUE. Waiting is carried out until communication has been reestablished, i.e. the value of the formula is FALSE. After this, waiting is continued until the value of the formula for the Loss of communication acknowledged property is TRUE or empty. The execution of the object can be continued from this time only.

In the time between the loss of communication and reestablishment of communication:

- ▶ No phase commands can be sent to the phase concerned
- ▶ If the status is changed directly, transient conditions are not checked
- No reactions are triggered for a status change
- the procedure path of the phase concerned remains the same when a Continue or Restart global command is executed
- The subsequent execution positions are offset until the communication to the phase has been reestablished



#### SKIPPING THE REESTABLISHMENT OF COMMUNICATION

In the event of a communication error, this can be skipped both whilst the error is active and whilst communication is being reestablished. In both cases, the communication is considered reestablished. All reactions to the skipped steps are triggered. The skipping is displayed in the tooltip.

If a communication error has been skipped, then a new communication error only occurs if the value of the formula for the Loss of communication property switches to FALSE.

#### COUNTER FOR THE RECIPE AND OPERATION FOR REESTABLISHED COMMUNICATION

In the status line of the recipe editor, there is information about errors in the recipe available with the symbol of the error display and the attendant tool tip information. Only the information with the highest priority is shown. Active errors and historical errors are not shown at the same time.

Priority	Color	Description
1	red	Currently x errors active.
2	red	Currently $\times$ communication errors not yet acknowledged.
3	yellow	Errors were present.
4	green	faultless

Prioritization and coding of the error display in the tooltip:

Note: "Currently x errors active" counts both procedure errors and communication errors.

# 15.2 PLC error

The detection of PLC errors can be configured for each phase.

To configure the detection of PLC errors in Runtime:

- 1. Configure a variable that reports the PLC error in zenon
- 2. Highlight the desired phase in the Editor in the Batch Control module.
- 3. Click, in the Loss of communication property group, on the PLC error property
- In the formula editor (on page 258) that opens, define the condition for detecting PLC errors using the configured variables.
   Note: The formula can be displayed in the report (on page 253).

To display the number of active and rectified PLC errors in a screen:

- 1. Select the unit for whose phases PLC error detection has been configured.
- 2. Go to the property group **Runtime information/Error**.
- 3. Configure the variables for the properties.



- Number of active PLC errors
- Number of rectified PLC errors
- 4. Configure the evaluation and display of variables in Runtime.

#### CHECKING IN RUNTIME

If a formula is linked for PLC errors, this is checked whilst the phase is active. Checking starts once communication with the PLC has been established and lasts until the phase has been deactivated. The connection is considered established if all values for the formula for detecting communication problems have been received.

If a communication error (on page 294) occurs, the PLC error is not checked as long as the communication error has not been acknowledged. Once it has been acknowledged, checking continues with the currently-pending value.

PLC errors and the rectification of these are displayed with their own symbol in the phase or in the operation and each displayed with an entry in the tooltip.

If there is a PLC error when a phase is ended, this is amended to rectified. In contrast to a normal deactivation of a PLC error, a separate event is sent: PLC error rectified by deactivation of the phase. This only applies for the actual closing, but not for a restart. When restarting, no new event is sent for PLC errors that continue to be active.

# **16. Error treatment**

Warnings and error messages are written in log files and can be analyzed with the Diagnosis Viewer. For this you must activate module Batch Control in the filter settings.

#### SYSTEM DRIVER VARIABLE

Batch Control provides the system driver **SYSDRV** with information via system driver variables. For information about their messages see manual **SYSDRV** (sysdrv.chm::/22853.htm) in chapter **Topic** - **Batch Control** (sysdrv.chm::/34270.htm).

#### **RECONSTRUCTION OF INDEX FILES**

If the index file (**recipe.unique**) is not read when Runtime is started or it does not exist, it is reconstructed upon starting. During this time, requests from clients that need an ID or are processing an ID cannot be processed. Modifications are rejected, queries are answered after the index has been created.